

AL-BAHER

English

الصف الخامس الابتدائي

First Term



2026

5th
Primary

Contents

Unit (1)	Food, Nature, and Culture	(3)
Unit (2)	My Healthy Body	(36)
Unit (3)	When Nature Changes	(71)
	Review (1)	(105)
Unit (4)	My Community	(107)
Unit (5)	Our World, Our Resources	(138)
Unit (6)	The Talking Earth	(173)
	Listening Texts	(188)
	Answers of paragraphs	(191)

Unit 1

Food, Nature, and Culture

الطعام والطبيعة والثقافة



Learning Outcomes

Ask and answer questions about the Nile River and the hot desert أسأل وأجب عن أسئلة تتعلق بنهر النيل والصحراء الحارة

Use new vocabulary related to life in the Nile River and the hot desert

Speaking

استخدم مفردات جديدة ترتبط بالحياة في نهر النيل والصحراء الحارة

Recognize and repeat consonant clusters in common words

تعرف على مجموعات الحروف الساكنة في الكلمات الشائعة وكرر نطقها

Discuss the moral of a short story

ناقش المغزى الأخلاقي لقصة قصيرة

Reading

Identify the sequence of events and the end in a story

حدد تسلسل الأحداث والنهاية في قصة

Reorder the steps of an Egyptian food recipe

أعد ترتيب خطوات وصفة طعام مصرية

Identify new vocabulary related to life in the Nile River

ميز مفردات جديدة تتعلق بالحياة في نهر النيل

Listening

Answer comprehension questions based on a listening text about life in the Nile River

أجب عن أسئلة الفهم استنادًا إلى نص استماعي عن الحياة في نهر النيل

Complete sentences using the adverbs of frequency

أكمل الجمل باستخدام ظروف التكرار

Writing

Write a recipe using sequence words

اكتب وصفة باستخدام كلمات تدل على التسلسل

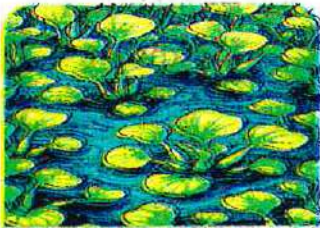
Make a flyer about your favorite restaurant

صمم منشورًا دعائيًا عن مطعمك المفضل

Lesson (1) Life Along The Nile

Listen, look and repeat.

استمع، وانظر وكرر.



water weeds

أعشاب مائية



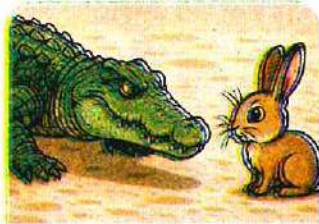
The Nile River

نهر النيل



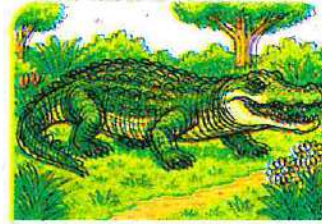
insects

حشرات



hunt

يصطاد



crocodile

تمساح

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

kinds	أنواع	creatures	مخلوقات
strong	قوي	plants	نباتات
dangerous	خطير	role	دور (وظيفة)
colorful	ملون	humans	البشر
(be) called	يُسمى / يُدعى	different	مختلف
scary	مخيف	amazing	مدهش

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hunt	يُصطاد	harm	يؤذي - يضر
survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	affect	يؤثر على
protect	يحمي	flow	يتدفق
	hunted		harmed
	survived		affected
	protected		flowed

Lesson (1)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
eat يأكل	ate	find يجد	found
come يأتي	came	know يعرف	knew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

around the world	حول العالم	home to	موطن لـ
That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام!	What about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟
kings of the Nile	ملوك النيل	play a role	يلعب دورًا
keep the Nile clean	يحافظ على نظافة النيل	tiny creatures	مخلوقات صغيرة جدًا

Opposites المتضادات

Word		Opposite
small صغير	x	big / large كبير
tiny ضئيل / صغير جدًا	x	huge ضخيم

Language Notes

fish

سمكة - أسماك

تأتي مفرد

e.g. I caught a fish.

e.g. Birds eat small fish.

تأتي جمع بدون حرف (s)

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. Crocodiles are strong and dangerous. They hunt large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat water weeds. Birds eat insects, small fish, and plants near the river.



توجد أنهار كثيرة حول العالم ويعد نهر النيل واحدًا من أطول الأنهار في العالم. وهو موطن للعديد من الحيوانات المختلفة. التماسيح قوية وخطيرة وتصيد الحيوانات الكبيرة في الماء أو بالقرب منه. تأكل الأسماك الصغيرة في النهر الأعشاب المائية بينما تتغذى الطيور على الحشرات والأسماك الصغيرة والنباتات القريبة من النهر.

Listen and read.

Where Life Flows حيث تتدفق الحياة

Ahmed and Laila are talking about life in the Nile River.

يتحدث أحمد وليلى عن الحياة في نهر النيل.

Ahmed Look at the small fish in the Nile River!
They are so colorful.

انظري إلى الأسماك الصغيرة في نهر النيل! ألوانها زاهية جدًا.

Laila Yes! Do you know that small fish eat plants
in the water? These are called water weeds.

نعم! هل تعلم أن الأسماك الصغيرة تأكل النباتات الموجودة في الماء؟ وهذه

النباتات تسمى الأعشاب المائية.

Ahmed That's interesting! What about birds—what
do they eat?

هذا مثير! وماذا عن الطيور؟ ماذا تأكل؟

Laila Birds eat small fish, insects, and even plants near the river.

تأكل الطيور الأسماك الصغيرة، والحشرات، وأحيانًا النباتات القريبة من النهر.

Ahmed Wow! What about big fish?

واو! وماذا عن الأسماك الكبيرة؟

Laila They eat smaller fish, insects, and tiny creatures in the water.

الأسماك الكبيرة تأكل الأسماك الأصغر، والحشرات، والمخلوقات الصغيرة في الماء.

Ahmed And crocodiles—what do they eat?

والتماسيح—ماذا تأكل؟

Laila They eat fish, birds, and sometimes larger animals that come
near the water.

التماسيح تأكل الأسماك، والطيور، وأحيانًا الحيوانات الأكبر التي تقترب من الماء.

Ahmed Huge crocodiles are scary! Do any animals hunt them?

التماسيح الضخمة مخيفة! هل هناك حيوانات تصطادها؟

Laila Not really—they are the kings of the Nile!

ليس بالفعل—فهي ملوك النيل!

Ahmed It's amazing how all animals in the river find food to survive.

من المدهش كيف تجد كل الحيوانات في النهر طعامًا لتعيش.

Laila Each animal plays an important role—that's why we must
protect the river.

كل حيوان له دور مهم—ولهذا السبب يجب أن نحمي النهر.



Activities On Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The is the longest river in the world.
a) Nile b) Red Sea c) Canal d) Lake
2. It's to many different animals.
a) house b) home c) farm d) garden
3. Crocodiles are and dangerous.
a) big b) small c) strong d) large
4. They large animals in or near the water.
a) like b) hunt c) plant d) play

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What of animals live in the Nile River?
a) kinds b) about c) like d) home
2. hunt large animals in or near the water.
a) Lions b) Birds c) Fish d) Crocodiles
3. Crocodiles are strong and
a) safe b) nice c) dangerous d) small
4. The small fish in the Nile are so
a) bad b) ugly c) colorful d) fat
5. The small plants in the water are called
a) trees b) grass c) water weeds d) flowers
6. Birds eat small fish,, and even plants near the river.
a) insects b) lions c) flowers d) crocodiles
7. Huge crocodiles are
a) nice b) beautiful c) scary d) gentle
8. All animals in the river find food to
a) survive b) play c) protect d) plant

9. Each animal plays an important

- a) game b) role c) sport d) rule

10. We must the river.

- a) harm b) come c) protect d) hurt

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Crocodiles - Nile - hunt - survive

There are many rivers around the world. The 1) is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals.

2)..... are strong and dangerous. They 3)..... large animals in or near the water.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ahmed and Leila are watching animals in the Nile River. They are talking about small fish that eat plants. These are called water weeds. Birds eat small fish, insects, and plants in or near the river. The big fish eat smaller fish. Crocodiles are strong and scary. They hunt large animals. They are the kings of the Nile. Each animal plays an important role, so we must protect the Nile.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Small fish eat

- a) big fish b) grass c) water weeds d) fruits

2. Crocodiles are strong and

- a) nice b) beautiful c) scary d) gentle

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do birds eat?

4. What is the text about?

5. Why must we protect the river?

Lesson (1)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. the longest - The Nile - in the - is - world - river - .

2. fish - water - Small - eat - weeds - .

3. are - the - Crocodiles - the Nile - of - kings - .

4. do - need to - Why - we - the Nile - protect - River - ?

5. small - like - What - look - do - fish - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

1. what do birds eat

2. The Nile is the longest river

7 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Life along the Nile

Guiding elements:

(longest - home to - fish - crocodiles)

Lesson (2)

Food in the Hot Desert

Vocabulary

المفردات

animals	حيوانات	lizard	سحلية
camel	جمل	owl	بومة
snake	ثعبان	energy	طاقة
fox	ثعلب	rocks	صخور
rat	فأر	balance	توازن

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
hunt	يصطاد hunt ^{ed}	store	يخزن store ^d
harm	يؤذي - يضر harm ^{ed}	give	يعطي gave
protect	يحمي protect ^{ed}	hide	يختبئ hid

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

stay strong	تبقى قوية	during the day	أثناء النهار
stay cool	تبقى باردة	at night	في الليل
stay in balance	تبقى في حالة توازن	come out	يخرج

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

Animals in the Desert

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.



تعد الصحراء مكانًا شديد الحرارة والجفاف، ومع ذلك تعيش فيها العديد من الحيوانات. تأكل الثعابين عادةً الحيوانات الصغيرة مثل الفئران أو السحالي. تعيش الجمال أيضًا في الصحراء وتعتمد على النباتات في طعامها لتظل قوية. تحصل السحالي على طاقتها من الحشرات التي تأكلها. تختبئ بعض الحيوانات تحت الصخور لتبقى باردة أثناء النهار، بينما تخرج أخرى، مثل البوم، ليلاً عندما يصبح الجو أطف. يلعب كل حيوان دورًا مهمًا في الصحراء، ويساهم في الحفاظ على توازن الطبيعة.

Lesson (2)

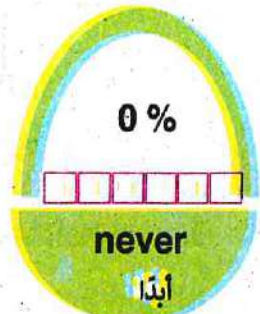
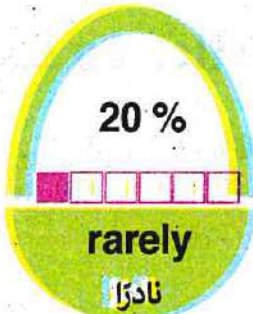
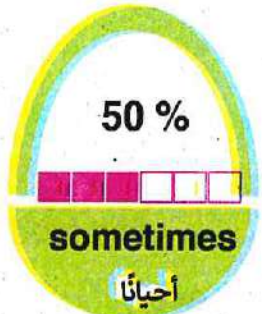
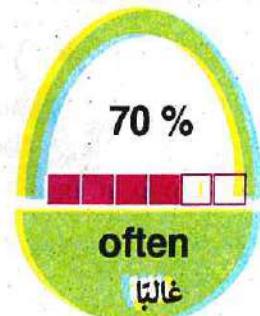
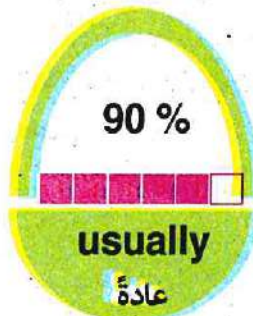
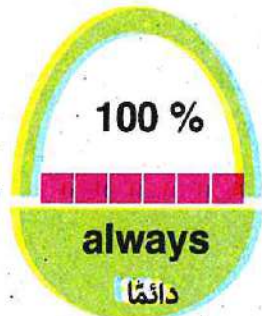
Language In Use

Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

We use **adverbs of frequency** to talk about **how often** something happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء ما.

تذكر: تأتي هذه الظروف مع زمن المضارع البسيط:



Remember تذكر

These adverbs come ...

تأتي هذه الظروف ...

1) Before the **main verb**.

١) قبل الفعل الأساسي.

Subject (فاعل) + **adverb** + **main verb**

e.g. Snakes **never eat** plants.

2) After the **verb to "be"** (am / is / are).

٢) بعد فعل «يكون».

Subject (فاعل) + **(am / is / are)** + **adverb**

e.g. Lizards **are sometimes** dangerous.

Look and read.

Camels **usually** eat grass.

الجمال عادةً تأكل الحشائش.

90 %

Snakes **never** store water in their bodies.

الثعابين لا تخزن الماء أبدًا في أجسامها.

0 %



Practice on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Desert animals find food.
a) always b) rarely c) never d) every
2. Camels grass.
a) usually eat b) eat always c) eat often d) eat never
3. Snakes eat small animals, like rats.
a) never b) rarely c) often d) every
4. Camels store water in their bodies.
a) always b) never c) rarely d) sometimes
5. Lizards dangerous.
a) sometimes are b) are sometimes
c) never are d) always are

Lesson (2)

6. Dad always coffee in the morning.
a) drink b) drinks c) drinking d) drank
7. Mom late for work.
a) is never b) never is c) always is d) often is
8. I walk to school. It's near my house.
a) never b) rarely c) always d) doesn't
9. My sister eats fish. She doesn't like it.
a) always b) usually c) never d) often
10. We early. We don't come late for school.
a) always are b) usually are
c) are always d) is always

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I (always) go to school on Fridays.
2. Camels (never) store water in their bodies.
3. Snakes (always are) dangerous.
4. We (go never) to school late.
5. I (always) watch TV. I watch it only on Friday.
6. Snakes (usually) eat plants.
7. How (always) do you wash your hands?
8. Camels (often) eat insects.
9. Mom (cooks often) lunch.
10. I (never am) late for school.
11. My friends (always are) happy. I love them.
12. I (sleep usually) early.
13. Anas (always is) polite.

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The desert is hot and
a) wet b) dry c) cold d) rainy
2. Many live there.
a) people b) birds c) animals d) trees
3. often eat rats and lizards.
a) Camels b) Snakes c) Fish d) Cows
4. Camels eat plants to stay
a) strong b) weak c) sad d) cool

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Snakes often eat small animals, like or lizards.
a) rats b) cats c) camels d) crocodiles
2. Insects give lizards
a) water b) energy c) money d) home
3. Each animal in the desert has an important to play.
a) ball b) role c) grass d) leg
4. Camels eat
a) lizards b) birds c) plants d) fish
5. live in the desert.
a) Fish b) Foxes c) Lions d) Turtles
6. come out at night when it's cooler.
a) Lions b) Elephants c) Owls d) Camels

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

lizards - hot - plants - cold

Many animals live in the desert. The desert is 1) and dry. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or 2) Camels eat 3) to stay strong.

Lesson (2)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The desert is hot and
a) rainy b) dry c) wet d) cloudy
- Owls come out at
a) night b) morning c) noon d) evening

B) Answer the following questions.

- What do lizards eat?
- What's the text about?
- Why do some animals hide under rocks?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- animals - Desert - food. - rarely - find - .
.....
- always - Camels - store - bodies. - their - water - in - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Camels (never) eat grass.
- Lizards (sometimes are) dangerous.

7 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Animals in the desert

Guiding elements:

(hot - snakes - lizards)

.....
.....

Lesson (3) Story Time: The Giving Tree

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

crown	تاج	trunk	جذع الشجرة	shade	ظل
care for	يرعى - يهتم بـ	branch	فرع - غصن	selfish	أناني

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

garden	حديقة	leaves	أوراق الشجر	delicious	لذيذ
feelings	مشاعر	nest	عش	queen	ملكة
needs	احتياجات	weak	ضعيف	slowly	ببطء
moral	العبرة - المغزى الأخلاقي	healthy	بصحة جيدة	toys	ألعاب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
ignore	يتجاهل ignored	climb	يتسلق climbed
realize	يدرك realized	water	يسقي watered
rest	يستريح rested	appreciate	يقدر appreciated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make	يصنع made	mean	يعني meant
think	يفكر thought	give	يعطي gave
bend	تنحني - تميل bent	grow	تنمو grew

Definitions

تعريفات

crown	a special hat worn by kings or queens	تاج
care for	to show interest and concern for something	يعتني بـ
shade	a dark shadow created when sunlight is blocked by something	ظل
trunk	the main, thick part of a tree supporting its branches and leaves	جذع الشجرة
branch	a part that grows out from a tree's trunk, where leaves grow	فرع
selfish	caring for oneself only	أناني

Lesson (3)

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

a boy named ...	ولد يُسمى ...	with his friends	مع أصدقائه
thought about	فكر في	years passed	مرت سنوات
look sad	يبدو حزينًا	become better	تصبح أفضل
take care of	يهتم بـ	give back	يرد الجميل (تعطيه كما تأخذ منه)
best friends	أعز الأصدقاء	rest in	يستريح في

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Once upon a time, there was a boy named Tom who loved a big, strong apple tree in his garden. Tom used the tree for every thing. He made **crowns** from its leaves and ate its delicious apples. He rested in its **shade** and climbed its **trunk** with his friends. But Tom never thought about the tree's feelings or needs. He rarely gave it food or water.



في قديم الزمان، كان هناك فتى يُدعى توم يحب شجرة تفاح كبيرة وقوية في حديقة منزله. استخدم

توم الشجرة في كل شيء؛ صنع التيجان من أوراقها، وأكل تفاحها اللذيذ، واستراح في ظلها، وتسلق جذعها مع أصدقائه. لكنه لم يفكر أبدًا في مشاعر الشجرة أو احتياجاتها، ونادرًا ما كان يمنحها ماءً أو طعامًا.

Tom traveled to another place. Years passed and Tom came back home.

سافر توم إلى مكان آخر، ومرت سنوات وعاد توم إلى بيته.

The tree looked sad. Its leaves **bent**, and its **branches** were weak. When Tom saw the tree, he realized that he had been **selfish**.

بدت الشجرة حزينة؛ انحنى أوراقها، وضعفت أغصانها. وعندما رآها توم، أدرك أنه كان أنانيًا.

Tom started to **care for** the tree, watering it, and protecting it from the sun.

Slowly, the tree began to become better.

بدأ توم يعتني بالشجرة، فسقاها، حماها من الشمس. وببطء، بدأت الشجرة تستعيد عافيتها.

Tom learned that taking care of something meant giving back, and he and the tree became the best of friends.

وتعلم توم أن العناية بشيء ما تعني أن تُعطيه كما تأخذ منه، وأصبح هو والشجرة أعز الأصدقاء.

Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The apple tree gave the boy everything. (.....)
2. The boy gave the tree water and food every day. (.....)
3. When Tom came back, the tree was strong and healthy. (.....)

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.



What is the moral of the story?

ما العبرة من القصة؟

We should appreciate those who care for us.

يجب أن نقدر من يهتمون بنا.



Read and think.

اقرأ وفكر.

Problem المشكلة

The boy took more from the tree than he gave.

أخذ الصبي من الشجرة أكثر مما أعطاها.

Solution الحل

He helped the tree grow again.

ساعد الشجرة على أن تنمو من جديد.

Result النتيجة

The tree became healthy. The boy learned to care for it like it cared for him.

أصبحت الشجرة بصحة جيدة وتعلم الصبي أن يرعاها كما رعته.

Lesson (3)



Pronunciation

A consonant cluster

A consonant cluster: is a sequence of two or more consonant sounds without vowels, such as **str-** in (**strong**) or **bl-** in (**black**).

مجموعة الحروف الساكنة: هو تتابع صوتي يتكون من حرفين ساكنين أو أكثر دون وجود حروف متحركة مثل **str-** في كلمة **strong**

أو **bl-** في كلمة **black**.

Listen and look.

استمع وانظر.



plant

نبات



truck

شاحنة



drink

يشرب



black

أسود



tree

شجرة



crops

محاصيل

More words

stream	جداول ماء (نهر صغير)	small	صغير	branch	فرع شجرة - غصن
spring	ينبوع ماء	smile	يبتسم	crocodile	تمساح

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ahmed **climbed** the **trunk** and rested near the **branches**. He saw a small **crocodile** beside the **stream**, and big fish swam past swiftly (بسرعة). Laila **smiled** and **drank** from the **spring**, then watched birds perch near the bank.

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom loved a big tree.
a) apple b) orange c) banana d) peach
2. It was in his
a) house b) garden c) room d) street
3. He made from its leaves.
a) clothes b) books c) crowns d) shoes
4. He ate its apples.
a) bad b) nice c) good d) delicious

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The is a special hat worn by kings and queens.
a) crown b) cap c) shade d) trunk
2. The queen wore a shiny gold at the ceremony.
a) shade b) crown c) branch d) sail
3. means a dark shadow created when sunlight is blocked by something.
a) Branch b) Crown c) Sail d) Shade
4. We sat under the tree to rest in the on a hot day.
a) crown b) shade c) sail d) tree
5. means caring for oneself only.
a) Selfish b) Happy c) Trunk d) Big
6. Omar was so He didn't want to give his toys to anyone.
a) careful b) selfish c) old d) cold
7. A bird built a nest on a high of the tree.
a) crown b) shade c) sail d) branch
8. He made crowns from the tree
a) leaves b) branches c) fruits d) roots

Lesson (3)

9. We should for those who help us.
a) take b) care c) give d) put
10. The tree looked sad. Its leaves
a) grew b) went c) bent d) gave

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

selfish - strong - apples - weak

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom 1) and Tom played on it. Tom traveled away and when he came back, the tree was 2)..... . Tom knew that he was 3)..... . So he decided to take care of the tree. The tree grew strong again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tom loved a big apple tree in his garden. He played under it, ate its apples, and climbed it, but he never cared for it. He didn't give it water or food. Tom traveled away for years. When he returned, the tree was weak and sad. Its leaves bent, and branches dropped. Tom felt sorry and started watering and protecting it. Slowly, the tree grew strong again. Tom learned an important lesson: caring means giving back. From then on, Tom and the tree were happy friends forever.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom had a big tree in his garden.
a) apple b) orange c) lemon d) palm
2. The tree was and sad.
a) strong b) happy c) weak d) big

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Tom do with the tree?

4. How did Tom feel when the tree was weak?

5. What lesson did he learn?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. grow - the - Tom - tree - helped - again - .

.....

2. climbed - He - with - the tree - friends - his - .

.....

3. trees - How - help - do - people - ?

.....

4. gave - or - He - the tree - rarely - water - food - .

.....

5. should - those - We - appreciate - care for - who - us - .

.....

6 Punctuate the following.

1. tom had a big apple tree

.....

2. what is the moral of the story

.....

7 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Caring for trees

Guiding elements:

(give - important - water - protect)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing: Let's Make a Recipe! Think and Create

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

recipe	وصفة الطهي	crispy	مقرمش	sauce	صلصة
flavor	نكهة / مذاق	lentils	عدس	flyer	نشرة دعائية
ingredients	مقادير - مكونات	menu	قائمة الطعام	main	أساسي - رئيسي

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

tasty	لذيذ	bowl	سلطانية - وعاء	crunchy	مقرمش
chopped	مفروم	slices	شرائح	mix	خليط
yummy	لذيذ	traditional	تقليدي	spicy	حار

Foods used in koshari

أطعمة تستخدم في الكشري

rice	أرز	spices	توابل
pasta	مكرونه	chickpeas	حمص
onions	بصل	red sauce	صلصة حمراء
garlic	ثوم	tomato sauce	صلصة الطماطم
vinegar	خل	Dakka	دقة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
cook يطبخ	cooked	add يضيف	added
prepare يجهز	prepared	pour يصب	poured
boil يسلق	boiled	cut يقطع	cut
fry يقلي	fried	put يضع	put
turn يتحول	turned	make يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on top	في الأعلى / فوقه	boil in water	يسلق في الماء
cut into	يقطع إلى	cook in a pot	يطبخ في وعاء / إناء
need to	يحتاج إلى	fry in oil	يقلي في الزيت

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

My Favorite Egyptian Food

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple ingredients in one bowl. **First**, you need to cook rice in a pot with water. In another pot, prepare small pasta. **Then**, boil **lentils** in water. For the red sauce, fry some chopped garlic in oil, add tomato sauce, vinegar, and some spices.



يُعد الكشري وجبة مصرية شهية تحتوي على مكونات بسيطة مجتمعة في طبق واحد. في البداية، يُطهى الأرز في إناء مع الماء. في إناء آخر، تُحضّر المكرونة الصغيرة. بعد ذلك، يُسلق العدس في الماء. ولتحضير الصلصة الحمراء، يُقلى بعض الثوم المفروم في الزيت، ثم تُضاف صلصة الطماطم والخل وبعض التوابل.

You also need to make crispy onions. **First**, cut them into thin slices. **Then**, fry them in oil until they turn brown and crunchy. After that, put the rice in a bowl and add the pasta and lentils on top. **Then**, add some chickpeas.

تحتاج أيضًا إلى تحضير البصل المقرمش. يُقطع أولاً إلى شرائح رقيقة، ثم يُقلى في الزيت حتى يتحول لونه إلى البني ويصبح مقرمشاً. بعد ذلك، يُوضع الأرز في وعاء، وتُضاف فوقه المكرونة والعدس، ثم يُضاف القليل من الحمص.

Finally, pour the red sauce all over it, and put the crispy onions on top. There are two more sauces you can add for more **flavor**. One is a spicy tomato sauce, and the other is Dakka which is made with garlic and vinegar. This mix of foods makes Koshari very yummy. Koshari is a traditional Egyptian food.

أخيراً، تُسكب الصلصة الحمراء فوق المكونات كلها، ويُوضع البصل المقرمش فوقها. يمكن أيضاً إضافة نوعين من الصلصات لتعزيز المذاق؛ الأولى صلصة طماطم حارة، والثانية «الدقة» المصنوعة من الثوم والخل. يُضفي هذا المزيج من المكونات طعماً لذيذاً على الكشري، الذي يُعد من الأطباق التقليدية في مصر.

Ingredients

المكونات

Main Ingredients:

- 2 cups white rice
- 1 cup brown lentils
- 2 cups small pasta
- 1½ cups cooked chickpeas

Crispy onions:

- 3 large sliced onions
- 1 cup vegetable oil for frying

Sauces:

- Red sauce
- Spicy tomato sauce
- Dakka sauce

Lessons (4 & 5)



Writing skills

Sequence words

وصفة طهي

When writing a recipe, organize the steps using **sequence words** like:

عند كتابة وصفة طهي، نظم الخطوات مستخدماً كلمات التسلسل، مثل:

First, ...	أولاً	Next, ...	ثم
Then, ...	التالي	Finally, ...	في النهاية
After that, ...	بعد ذلك		

Let's practice sequence words using the Koshari recipe.

1) **First**, cook rice in a pot and pasta in another pot. Then boil lentils.

أولاً، اطبخ الأرز في إناء والمكرونه في إناء آخر ثم اسلق العدس.

2) **Then**, fry some chopped garlic in oil and add tomato sauce.

ثم، اقلي بعض الثوم المفروم في الزيت وأضف صلصة الطماطم.

3) **After that**, make crispy onions: cut them into thin pieces and fry them.

بعد ذلك، حضر البصل المقرمش بقطعه شرائح رفيعة وقلبه.

4) **Next**, put the rice in a bowl and add the pasta and lentils on top.

ثم، ضع الأرز في وعاء وأضف فوقه المكرونه والعدس.

5) **Then**, pour the red sauce all over it, and put the crispy onions on top.

ثم، اسكب الصلصة الحمراء فوقها وضع البصل المقرمش في الأعلى.

6) **Finally**, add spicy sauce at the end.

وأخيراً، أضف الصلصة الحارة في النهاية.

Making a flyer

عمل منشور دعائي

When you make a **flyer**, make sure to include these elements.

عند عمل منشور دعائي، تأكد أنه يتضمن هذه العناصر.

A **main heading** is the big title.

العنوان الرئيسي هو العنوان الكبير.

A **sub-heading** is the smaller title.

العنوان الفرعي هو العنوان الأصغر.

An **image** is a photo or drawing.

الصورة هي صورة فوتوغرافية أو رسم.

A **menu** attracts customers.

قائمة تجذب الزبائن.

A **call to action** is an invitation.

الدعوة إلى الإجراء هي دعوة موجهة.

Think and Create A Flyer

Look at the restaurant flyer below.



5 call to action

For more information
visit our website

3 image

2 sub-heading

1 main heading

4 Menu

Restaurant

FOOD MENU

FAST FOOD

Cheese burger 35 LE

Meat pizza 40 LE

Fried chicken 50 LE

SANDWICH

Grilled chicken 20 LE

Sea food 30 LE

Mix cheese 15 LE

Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Koshari is a Egyptian meal.
a) good b) tasty c) small d) big
- It has many ingredients in one bowl.
a) simple b) bad c) mix d) high
- You need to cook in a pot.
a) pasta b) onions c) rice d) garlic
- Then boil in water.
a) tomato b) lentils c) sauce d) spices

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Let's make a for Koshari.
a) recipe b) book c) story d) menu
- Koshari has many in one bowl.
a) supplies b) ingredients c) groups d) fruits
- Crispy is added on top of Koshari.
a) chickpeas b) lentils c) onions d) pasta
- You need to cook rice in a pot with
a) oil b) water c) spices d) vinegar
- Koshari is an food.
a) Italian b) Chinese c) Egyptian d) Indian
- We chopped garlic in oil.
a) boil b) fry c) cook d) bake
- is made with garlic and vinegar.
a) Onion b) Red sauce c) Dakka d) Lentils
- We cut onions into thin
a) slices b) boxes c) squares d) circles

Unit (1)

9. Add sauce at the end.
a) sweet b) spicy c) sugary d) lemon
10. This of foods makes Koshari very yummy.
a) box b) mix c) group d) piece

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

flavor - rice - ingredients - milk

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian food. It is made with 1), lentils, chickpeas, and crispy onions. Red sauce, spicy sauce, and Dakka give it more 2) This mix of 3) makes Koshari delicious and loved in Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Koshari is a famous Egyptian dish made with simple ingredients. First, cook rice in water. Then, prepare pasta and boil lentils. Make a red sauce by frying garlic, adding tomato sauce, vinegar, and spices. Fry onions until they become crispy. In a bowl, add rice, pasta, lentils, and chickpeas. Pour the red sauce on top and add crispy onions. You can also add spicy tomato sauce or Dakka, made with garlic and vinegar. This mix of foods makes Koshari very tasty and popular in Egypt.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We cook rice in
a) water b) oil c) milk d) juice
2. is made with garlic and vinegar.
a) Red sauce b) Dakka c) Pasta d) Onion

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the text about?

.....

4. Where do you pour the red sauce?

.....

5. What do you think of Koshari?

.....

Lessons (4 & 5)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. onions - slices - Cut - thin - into - .
.....
2. is - Egyptian - Koshari - traditional - a - food - .
.....
3. you - How - make - do - sauce - red - ?
.....
4. some - oil - Fry - in - garlic - chopped - .
.....
5. today - is - Koshari - popular - and - tasty - .
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

1. koshari is an egyptian meal.
.....
2. do you like Koshari
.....

7 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Your favorite Egyptian dish

Guiding elements:

(Koshari - ingredients - yummy)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Review on Unit (1)

Vocabulary

The Nile River	نهر النيل	desert	صحراء
water weeds	أعشاب مائية	snakes	ثعابين
insects	حشرات	lizards	سحالي
crocodiles	تماسيح	dangerous	خطير
scary	مخيف	survive	ينجو - يبقى على قيد الحياة
role	دور	protect	يحمي
energy	طاقة	owl	بومة
balance	توازن	crown	تاج
care for	يعتني بـ	shade	ظل
branch	غصن - فرع	selfish	أناني
lentils	عدس	ingredients	مكونات - مقادير
flavor	نكهة - مذاق	tasty	لذيذ

Pronunciation

A consonant cluster

plant	نبات	drink	يشرب
crops	محاصيل	climb	يتسلق
strong	قوي	truck	شاحنة
black	أسود	branch	غصن

Language (Adverbs of Frequency)

always - usually - often - sometimes - rarely - never

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء ما.

e.g. Snakes **never** eat plants. (Before the main verb)

e.g. Lizards **are sometimes** dangerous. (After verb to be)



Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Life along the Nile

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. Crocodiles are strong and dangerous. They hunt large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat water weeds. Birds eat insects, small fish, and plants near the river.

Animals in the desert

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler.

The story of the tree

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom apples and Tom played on it. He rarely gave it food or water. Tom traveled away and when he came back, the tree was sad. Tom knew that he was selfish. So he decided to take care of the tree. The tree grew better again.

My favorite Egyptian food

Koshari is a popular Egyptian dish made of rice, pasta, lentils, and chickpeas. At the top, we put red sauce, crispy onions, and sometimes spicy sauce or Dakka. Simple ingredients make it tasty and loved in Egypt. Koshari is a favorite food for many people.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

النيل	دور
جشرات	يحمي
أعشاب مائية	قوي
يصطاد	أسماك صغيرة
خطر	التمساح
يبقى على قيد الحياة	مخيف

Lesson (2)

صحراء	طاقة
ثعبان	يختبئ
جمل	بومة
جاف	أثناء النهار
فأر	مهم
سحلية	في توازن

Lesson (3)

تاج	حديقة
يهتم بـ	أوراق الشجر
ظل	يتسلق
جذع الشجرة	عبرة - مغزى
فرع - غصن	يسقى
أناني	ملكة

Lessons (4 & 5)

وصفة طهي	دقة
مقادير	حمص
عدس	يسلق في الماء
نكهة - مذاق	يحمّر في الزيت
مكرونة	في الأعلى
صلصة حمراء	ثوم مفروم

Activities On Unit 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are many around the world.
a) seas b) rivers c) animals d) canals
2. The is one of longest rivers.
a) Nile b) canal c) desert d) Thames
3. The Nile is to many different animals.
a) beach b) home c) house d) villa
4. Crocodiles are strong and
a) nice b) small c) safe d) dangerous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Small fish in the Nile eat
a) grass b) leaves c) water weeds d) lizards
2. Lizards eat insects to get
a) energy b) food c) water d) home
3. On a hot day, we sit under the tree to rest in the
a) crown b) sail c) shade d) trunk

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

plants - animals - on - under

The desert is hot and dry, but many 1)..... live there. Camels eat 2)..... to stay strong. Some animals hide 3)..... rocks to stay cool during the day. Owls come out at night when it is cooler.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ahmed saw a big tree in the park. It was tall. Ahmed climbed the trunk and rested near the branches. He saw a small crocodile beside the stream, and big fish swam past swiftly. Laila smiled and drank from the spring, then watched birds perch near the bank.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed climbed the of a big tree.
a) leaves b) branches c) flowers d) trunk
2. Laila drank from the
a) Nile b) spring c) sea d) canal

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Ahmed rest?
4. What swam past swiftly?
5. What did the birds do?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - Nile - Crocodiles - the kings - of - the - .
.....
2. often - Snakes - small - eat - animals - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Camels (eat usually) grass.
2. Dad (always) drinks tea. He doesn't like it.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. The Nile River is very important
2. do you like Koshari

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

The Nile

Guiding elements:

(longest - animals - protect)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

small - colorful - insects - interesting

- Sarah : Look at the small fish in the Nile River.
 Laila : Yes. They are so 1).....
 Sarah : Do you know that 2)..... fish eat plants?
 Laila : That's 3)..... ! What about birds?
 Sarah : Birds eat small fish and 4).....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

What - lizards - hot - eat

- Ahmed : What's the weather like in the desert?
 Omar : It's 1)..... and dry.
 Ahmed : 2)..... animals live there?
 Omar : Camels and snakes.
 Ahmed : What do snakes 3)..... ?
 Omar : They eat rats and 4).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- Lizards dangerous.
 a) are sometimes b) sometimes are
 c) never are d) is sometimes
- Mom goes to work late. She is always early.
 a) often b) sometimes c) never d) rarely
- Camels eat grass.
 a) never b) rarely c) usually d) every
- Crocodiles are and dangerous.
 a) nice b) small c) good d) scary
- A bird built a nest on a high of the tree.
 a) crown b) shade c) sail d) branch

Unit 2

My Healthy Body

جسمي السليم



Learning Outcomes

	Ask and answer questions about healthy habits	اطرح أسئلة وأجب عنها حول العادات الصحية
Speaking	Talk about personal healthy habits	تحدث عن العادات الصحية الشخصية
	Recognize and repeat one syllable words	تعرف على الكلمات ذات المقطع الواحد وكرر نطقها
Reading	Answer questions related to a text on healthy habits	اجب عن أسئلة تتعلق بنص عن العادات الصحية
	Discuss healthy habits based on the reading text	ناقش العادات الصحية استناداً إلى النص المقروء
Listening	Identify and understand vocabulary related to the health	حدد وا فهم المفردات المتعلقة بالصحة
	Listen to a dialog and answer comprehension questions	استمع إلى حوار وأجب عن أسئلة الفهم
	Distinguish between countable and uncountable nouns, and apply the correct determiners in context	ميز بين الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة، واطبق المحددات المناسبة حسب السياق
Writing	Write sentences on how to stay healthy	اكتب جملاً حول كيفية الحفاظ على الصحة
	Write a paragraph about a healthcare giver	اكتب فقرة عن مقدم رعاية صحية

Lesson (1) Sports for Better Health

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

sports	رياضات	stress	الضغط - التوتر
football	كرة القدم	stressed	مُجهَد - متوتر
swimming	السباحة	regularly	بانتظام
heart	القلب	mental health	الصحة النفسية
muscles	العضلات	tired	مرهق - مُتعب
lungs	الرئتان	energy	طاقة
fit	لائق بدنيًا	healthy	صحي

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

important	هام	fruit	فاكهة
fast	سريع	Exactly!	بالضبط!
bones	عظام	Absolutely!	بكل تأكيد!
normal	عادي - طبيعي	Sure!	بالتأكيد
parts	أجزاء	chest	صدر
organs	أعضاء الجسم	unhappy	حزين
mind	عقل	better health	صحة أفضل

Definitions

تعريفات

fit	being healthy and strong because you exercise	لائق بدنيًا
mental health	how you feel and think	الصحة (النفسية / العقلية)
stressed	feeling unhappy or tired	مُجهَد
lungs	the organs in your chest that help you breathe	الرئتان
muscles	the parts of your body that help you move	العضلات

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
increase	يزيد increased
stay	يبقى stayed
exercise	يتمرن exercised
reduce	يقلل reduced
try	يحاول / يجرب tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
grow	ينمو grew
make	يجعل made
feel	يشعر felt
lose	يفقد lost
sleep	ينام slept

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel good	يشعر بالراحة	get tired	يصاب بالإرهاق
make ... strong	يجعله ... قويًا	lose weight	يفقد وزن
What about swimming?	ماذا عن السباحة؟	That's great!	هذا رائع!
give ... energy	يمد بالطاقة	sleep better	ينام بشكل أفضل
play sports	يمارس الرياضة	go for a walk	يذهب للمشي
whole body	الجسم بالكامل	take care of	يعني بـ
in fact	في الحقيقة	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.



What sport do you want to play to make yourself stronger?

أي رياضة تريد أن تمارسها لتقوي بها نفسك؟

Why is it important for you to stay healthy?

لماذا من المهم لك أن تبقى بصحة جيدة؟

I want to play football.

أريد أن ألعب كرة القدم.

To help me feel better.

لتساعدني أن أشعر بالتحسن.



Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

لائق بدنيا، سريع، ويشعر بالراحة Fit, Fast, and Feeling Good

Mazen Mom, why is it important to play sports?

أمي، لماذا تُعد ممارسة الرياضة أمراً مهماً؟

Mom Well, sports help us stay healthy and make our bodies stronger.

حسناً، تساعدنا الرياضة في الحفاظ على الصحة وتقوي أجسامنا.

Mazen Oh! So if I play **football**, will I be stronger?

أوه! إذا لو مارست كرة القدم، هل سأصبح أقوى؟



Mom Yes, it makes your **heart** strong and helps your **muscles** grow. It also **increases energy**.

نعم، فهي تقوي القلب وتساعد العضلات على النمو، وتزيد من النشاط (الطاقة).

Mazen What about **swimming**?

وماذا عن السباحة؟

Mom Swimming is very good, too! It makes your **lungs** strong. In fact, it helps your whole body.

السباحة ممتازة أيضاً! فهي تقوي الرئتين، وفي الحقيقة فإنها تفيد الجسم بأكمله.

Mazen Good, but sometimes I get **tired** when I play sports.

هذا جيد، لكن أحياناً أشعر بالتعب عندما أمارس الرياضة.

Mom That's normal. Try eating some fruit before you exercise to give you more energy.

هذا أمر طبيعي. جرب أن تأكل فاكهة قبل التمرين، فهي تعطيك طاقة أكثر.

Mazen Alright. Sports make us **fit** too, right?

تمام. والرياضة تجعلنا أكثر لياقة، صحيح؟

Mom Exactly! **Exercise** helps you lose weight and makes your bones stronger.

بالضبط! تساعدك التمارين على إنقاص الوزن وتقوي عظامك.

Mazen What about our **mental health**? Can sports help us with that?

وماذا عن صحتنا العقلية (النفسية)؟ هل الرياضة تفيدنا في ذلك؟

Mom Absolutely! **Exercising regularly** helps you **sleep better** and **reduces stress**.

بكل تأكيد! الممارسة المنتظمة للرياضة تحسن النوم وتُخفف التوتر.

Mazen That's great! I think I will play sports more regularly.

هذا رائع! أعتقد أنني سأمارس الرياضة بانتظام أكثر.

Mom How about going for a walk together?

ما رأيك أن نتمشي سوياً؟

Mazen Now? Sure! I want to be healthy.

الآن؟ بالتأكيد! أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة.



Listen again and answer.

استمع مرة أخرى، وأجب.

1. How does football make you stronger?

2. What should you do if you feel tired while playing sports?

3. Why is exercising regularly important?

4. How does swimming help the body?

Language Functions

What about + noun / v + ing?

تستخدم لتقديم اقتراح:

e.g. **What about an apple?**

ما رأيك في تناول تفاحة؟

e.g. **What about going** for a walk?

ما رأيك أن نذهب للتمشية؟

try + (v + ing)

يجرب شيء

e.g. **Try eating** some fruit before you exercise.

make + مفعول + adj. (صفة)

يجعل

e.g. Swimming **makes** your lungs **strong**.

What should + فاعل + inf. ...?

لطلب النصيحة

e.g. **What should I do** if I feel tired?

Activities On Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Sometimes we feel after playing sports.
a) happy b) sad c) fine d) tired
- Exercising can give us
a) sport b) muscles c) energy d) mind
- Sports help us stay
a) fit b) fat c) thin d) slim
- Sports make our bones
a) weaker b) harder c) stronger d) taller

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Mazen wants to play sports to be
a) strong b) unhealthy c) lazy d) tired
- Sports help your grow.
a) hair b) muscles c) eyes d) skin
- Exercising regularly helps you reduce
a) stars b) stores c) streets d) stress
- Swimming helps make our strong.
a) football b) sports c) fruits d) lungs
- Exercising helps you sleep better.
a) happily b) sadly c) regularly d) kindly
- Exercise helps you lose
a) weight b) wait c) white d) weigh
- Try some fruit before you exercise.
a) drinking b) playing c) eating d) giving

8. Football helps increase
 a) energy b) lungs c) sports d) walk
9. How about for a walk?
 a) go b) goes c) went d) going
10. are the organs in your chest that help you breathe.
 a) Hearts b) Lungs c) Muscles d) Eyes
11. He is He feels unhappy and tired.
 a) early b) easy c) stressed d) important
12. "..... health" means how you feel and think.
 a) Mental b) Metal c) Muscle d) Exercising

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

swimming - lungs - healthy - muscles

Playing sports is important because it helps us stay 1) and makes our bodies stronger. When we play sports like football, it makes the heart stronger, helps the 2) grow, and increases our energy. Swimming is also very good because it makes the 3) strong and helps the whole body.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. better - helps - you - Exercise - sleep - .

2. lungs - Swimming - stronger - your - makes - .

3. make - feel - you - happy - Sports - and - fit - .

4. the body - How - help - swimming - does - ?

Lesson (1)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sports are important because they keep us healthy and make our bodies strong. Football strengthens (تقوى) the heart and helps muscles grow. Swimming improves lungs and gives more energy. Exercise makes your bones stronger and helps to lose weight. It also improves mental health, helps you sleep better, and reduces stress. Exercising regularly is very important for a healthy life.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Football helps your grow.
a) lungs b) muscles c) bones d) brain
- Exercise helps you weight.
a) gain b) lose c) hold d) increase

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does swimming do?
- How does exercise help your bones?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

6 Punctuate the following.

- why is sport important
.....

- i want to be healthy
.....

7 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

How to be healthy

Guiding elements:

(play sport - vegetables and fruit - walk)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson (2) My Habits: Now and Then

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

habits	عادات	vitamins	فيتامينات
soda	صودا «مشروبات غازية»	journey	رحلة

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

friends	أصدقاء	family	أسرة
a walk	تمشية	important	هام
energy	طاقة	easy	سهل
picnic	نزهة	favorite	مفضل
snack	وجبة خفيفة	fridge	ثلاجة

Foods

أطعمة

fruit	فاكهة	apples	تفاح
vegetables	خضراوات	bananas	موز
burger	برجر	watermelon	بطيخ
chips	شيبسي - رقائق البطاطس	oranges	برتقال
sweets	حلوى	carrots	جزر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
share	يشارك / شارك	cook	يطبخ - يطهو / طبخ
change	يغير / غير	wake up	يستيقظ / استيقظ
grill	يشوي / شوي	eat	يأكل / أكل
fry	يقلّي / قلّي	give	يعطي / أعطى
bake	يخبز / خبز	drink	يشرب / شرب

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do sports	يمارس رياضة	healthy habits	عادات صحية
now and then	في الماضي والحاضر	like we used to do	كما اعتدنا أن نفعل
in the past	في الماضي	on weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
used to + inf.	أعتاد أن	instead of	بدلاً من
a lot of	الكثير من	I'd like to ...	أود أن ...

Lesson (2)

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

رحلة آدم نحو حياة أكثر صحة Adam's journey to a Healthier life

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to share how my **habits** have changed. In the **past**, I **woke up late** on weekends and **didn't exercise** much. **Now**, I **wake up early** and **exercise** every morning—it makes me feel strong and happy.

مرحبًا! أنا آدم، وأود أن أشارككم كيف تغيرت عاداتي. في الماضي، كنت أستيقظ متأخرًا في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع ولم أمارس الرياضة كثيرًا. أما الآن، فأستيقظ مبكرًا وأمارس الرياضة كل صباح—وهذا يجعلني أشعر بالقوة والسعادة.

I **used to watch TV all day**, but **now I play football** with

friends every Saturday. Before, I loved chips, burgers, and sweets. **Now**, I **eat more fruits and vegetables**, which give me important **vitamins**.

كنت أشاهد التلفاز طوال اليوم، لكنني الآن ألعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائي كل يوم سبت. في السابق، كنت أحب رقائق البطاطس والبرجر والحلويات. أما الآن، فأتناول المزيد من الفواكه والخضروات، لأنها تزودني بالفيتامينات المهمة.

My favorite snacks are apples, bananas, and carrots. And I drink **water** instead of **soda**.

وجباتي الخفيفة المفضلة هي التفاح والموز والجزر. وأشرب الماء بدلًا من المشروبات الغازية.

My family's habits changed too—we grill or bake food instead of frying like we used to do in the **past**, and **we eat dinner early**, followed by a walk.

These changes give me more energy and help me feel better. Have you changed your habits too?

تغيرت عادات أسرتي أيضًا — فنحن نشوي أو نخبز الطعام بدلًا من قليه كما كنا نفعل في الماضي، ونتناول العشاء مبكرًا، ثم نخرج للتمشية. هذه التغييرات تمنحني المزيد من الطاقة وتساعدني على الشعور بالتحسن. هل غيرت عاداتك أنت أيضًا؟



Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Adam exercised a lot in the past. (.....)
2. Adam eats more fruits and vegetables now. (.....)
3. In the past, Adam woke up early on weekends. (.....)
4. Adam's family now eats dinner early and goes for a walk. (.....)

Language In Use

Using (a / an / some / any)

We use **(a)** before **singular countable nouns** starting with **a consonant sound**.

نستخدم «a» قبل الأسماء المفردة التي تعد وتبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a banana - a carrot - a potato - a watermelon

e.g. I eat a banana every day.

We use **(an)** before **singular countable nouns** starting with **a vowel sound**.

نستخدم «an» قبل الأسماء المفردة التي تعد وتبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an apple - an egg - an ice cream - an orange - an umbrella

e.g. She eats an egg in the morning.

We use **(some)** with **plural countable nouns** or **uncountable nouns** in **affirmative sentences**.

نستخدم «some» مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد في الجمل المثبتة.

e.g. I have some apples.

e.g. She drank some water.

Uncountable nouns:

بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد

water	ماء	juice	عصير	sugar	سكر
milk	لبن	oil	زيت	salt	ملح

We use **(any)** with **plural countable nouns** or **uncountable nouns** in **negative sentences and questions**.

نستخدم «any» مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد في جمل النفي والاستفهام.

e.g. There aren't any apples left.

e.g. Do you have any water?

لاحظ

Request and offer:

نستخدم (some) في سؤالي العرض والطلب.

e.g. Would you like some tea?

«عرض»

e.g. Could I have some water?

«طلب»



Practice on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I have potatoes.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
2. Are there tomatoes in the fridge?
a) a b) an c) some d) any
3. We don't have onions.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
4. I want to have egg.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
5. There isn't milk in the fridge.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
6. I will buy oranges for the picnic.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
7. She bought some yesterday.
a) apple b) eggs c) carrot d) watermelon
8. He bought cotton candy yesterday.
a) a b) an c) some d) any

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We eat (any) apples every day.
2. We saw (an) monkey in the zoo.
3. My uncle wants (a) apple.
4. Would you like (any) juice?
5. There isn't (some) water.
6. We don't want (some) oranges.
7. There is (a) egg on the table.
8. We will buy (any) fruits for the picnic.
9. She bought some (orange) yesterday.
10. I have (an) watermelon.

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My have changed.
a) watch b) customs c) habits d) football
- I didn't much before.
a) work b) play c) exercise d) eat
- Now, I up early every morning.
a) sleep b) study c) wake d) run
- Exercising in the morning makes me feel and happy.
a) tired b) strong c) sleepy d) lazy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I drink water, but I don't drink because it is bad for our health.
a) coffee b) milk c) soda d) juice
- We grill or bake food instead of it.
a) eating b) drinking c) cutting d) frying
- We eat dinner early, followed by a to be healthy.
a) party b) walk c) TV d) movie
- These changes in my habits give me more
a) energy b) sugar c) soda d) exercise
- Is there orange juice left in the fridge?
a) a b) an c) any d) some
- She bought bottle of water.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
- Omar will buy apples for the picnic.
a) a b) some c) any d) an
- We don't have oranges left.
a) a b) an c) some d) any

Lesson (2)

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello! I'm Adam. My habits have changed a lot. Before, I used to wake up late, not exercise and watch TV all day. I also ate chips, burgers, and sweets. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning. I play football with my friends, eat more fruits and vegetables, and drink water instead of soda. My favorite snacks are apples, bananas, and carrots. My family changed too—we grill or bake food and eat dinner early. We also go for a walk after dinner. These changes give me energy and make me feel better. Have you changed your habits too?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Adam plays football with his
a) teachers b) friends c) family d) brother
- The underlined pronoun "me" refers to
a) Adam b) friend c) family d) dinner

B) Answer the following questions.

- How did Adam's family change their food habits?
.....

- When does Adam wake up now?
.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- didn't - I - before - exercise - much - .
.....
- play - every - friends - Saturday - football - I - with - .
.....
- instead - water - I - drink - of - soda - .
.....
- eat - fruits - vegetables - I - and - more - now - .
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I have (an) watermelon.
2. There is (any) milk in the fridge.
3. She ate (a) apple yesterday.
4. I don't have (some) food at home.
5. They want to buy (an) sugar from the supermarket.

6 Read and correct the mistake.

1. I met any friends yesterday. (.....)
2. We want to have an tea. (.....)
3. Could I have any coffee, please? (.....)
4. Is there a eraser in your bag? (.....)
5. I'd like to have an apple juice. (.....)

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i have some apples
.....
2. do you play any sports
.....

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Your habits now and then

Guiding elements:

(used to - wake up - eat - sleep)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson (3) Heart and Blood

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

heart	قلب	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
organs	أعضاء	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
fist	قبضة يد	blood vessels	أوعية دموية
pump blood	يضخ الدم	muscle	عضلة
oxygen	أكسجين	stress	ضغط - توتر
exercise	التمارين (الرياضية)	substances	مواد

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

amazing	مذهل	waste	فضلات	tubes	أنابيب
size	حجم	sick	مريض	powerful	قوي
job	وظيفة	strong	قوي	tips	نصائح
parts	أجزاء	gas	غاز	hand	يد
cells	خلايا	body	جسم	tightly	بإحكام

Definitions

تعريفات

organ	a body part that does a job	عضو «شئ جسم الإنسان»
blood vessels	tubes that carry blood through the body	أوعية دموية
fist	a hand when it is tightly closed	قبضة يد
oxygen	a gas that we breathe	أكسجين
nutrients	substances that give us energy and helps our bodies grow	عناصر غذائية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
carry يحمل	carried
breathe يتنفس	breathed
pump يضخ	pumped
follow يتبع	followed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
hurt يؤذي - يضر	hurt
beat يدق - ينبض	beat
sleep ينام	slept
take يأخذ	took

Unit (2)

تعابير و حروف جر هامة

Important expressions and prepositions

super pump	المضخة الخارقة	give energy	يمد بالطاقة
sleep well	ينام بشكل جيد	get sick	يمرض
keep us alive	يبقينا على قيد الحياة	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة
keep it healthy	يحافظ على صحته	tightly closed	مقبوضة بقوة
share with	بتشارك مع	take away	يُبعد
take care of	يعني بـ	bad for	سيء لـ
located in	يقع في	the size of your fist	حجم قبضة يدك

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

Our Body's Super Pump! مضخة جسمنا الخارقة

We have an amazing body. The **heart** is one of the most important **organs** of our body. It is about the size of your **fist**. The heart's job is to **pump blood** to all parts of the body.



لدينا جسم مذهل. القلب هو أحد أهم أعضاء جسمنا. حجمه تقريبًا بحجم قبضة يدك. ووظيفة القلب هي ضخ الدم إلى جميع أجزاء الجسم.

Blood carries **oxygen** and **nutrients** to every cell. It also takes away waste like carbon dioxide. The heart pumps blood through **blood vessels**, which are like small tubes.

يحمل الدم الأكسجين والعناصر الغذائية إلى كل خلية. كما يزيل الفضلات مثل ثاني أكسيد الكربون. ويضخ القلب الدم عبر الأوعية الدموية، التي تشبه الأنابيب الصغيرة.

The heart is a strong **muscle** that keeps us alive. Too much **stress** can **hurt** your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy. You can take care of your heart by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking a lot of water.

القلب عضلة قوية تحافظ على حياتنا. التوتر الزائد يمكن أن يضر القلب، لذلك من المهم الحفاظ على صحته. يمكنك العناية بقلبك من خلال تناول طعام صحي، والنوم الجيد، وشرب الكثير من الماء.

Also, **exercise** helps your heart pump better and keeps you from getting sick. If you follow these tips, your heart will stay strong. It may be small, but it is very powerful!

كما أن ممارسة التمارين الرياضية تساعد قلبك على الضخ بشكل أفضل وتحميك من الإصابة بالأمراض. إذا اتبعت هذه النصائح، فسيبقى قلبك قويًا. قد يكون صغيرًا، لكنه قوي جدًا!

Lesson (3)



Pronunciation

Syllables

A **syllable**: is a word part with one vowel sound. It can have one or more vowel letters but only one vowel sound.

المقطع الصوتي: هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد فقط. قد يضم حرفاً متحركاً واحداً أو أكثر، لكن له صوت متحرك واحد فقط.

Words like **bread** (5 letters) and **pot** (3 letters) look different but both have one syllable because they only have one vowel sound.

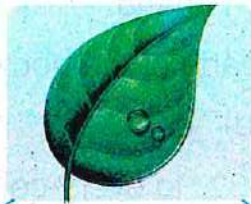
كلمات مثل «**bread**» (خمسة أحرف) و«**pot**» (ثلاثة أحرف) تبدو مختلفة، لكن الكلمتان تحتويان على مقطع صوتي واحد فقط، لأن فيهما صوت متحرك واحد فقط.

Examples: **arm**, **jump**, **feed**, **bread**

أمثلة على كلمات ذات مقطع واحد:

Look, listen and say.

انظر، واستمع وقل.



leaf

ورقة الشجر



deaf

أصم



pot

إناء



flag

علم

More words

run

يجري tree

شجرة fish

سمكة

jump

يقفز hat

قبعة clap

يصفق

Tip

Clap It Out!

One clap for each vowel sound.

BA - NA - NA

Clap - Clap - Clap

Three claps!



تصفيقة واحدة لكل صوت متحرك.

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We have an amazing
a) TV b) table c) heart d) head
2. The heart is one of the most important
a) fists b) organs c) vessels d) nutrients
3. The heart is about the size of our
a) hand b) leg c) foot d) fist
4. The heart's job is to pump around our body.
a) water b) juice c) oil d) blood

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The is one of the most important organs of the body.
a) bone b) heart c) arm d) hand
2. The heart's job is to blood to all parts of the body.
a) clean b) store c) pump d) drink
3. Blood carries oxygen and to every cell.
a) waste b) nutrients c) sugar d) water
4. Blood takes away waste like
a) nitrogen b) vitamins c) carbon dioxide d) protein
5. The heart pumps blood through blood
a) cans b) vessels c) glasses d) cups
6. The heart is a strong that keeps us alive.
a) pot b) cell c) muscle d) tube
7. Too much can hurt your heart.
a) sleep b) juice c) stress d) rest
8. helps your heart pump better and keeps you from getting sick.
a) Exercise b) Sugar c) Salt d) Rest

Lesson (3)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

oxygen - fist - organ - water

We have an amazing body. The heart is the most important

1) It's about the size of a 2) It pumps blood around our body. Blood carries 3) and nutrients to every cell.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The heart is a very important organ that pumps blood to all parts of the body. It is about the size of a fist. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients and removes waste like carbon dioxide. The heart pumps blood through blood vessels. It is a strong muscle that keeps us alive. Too much stress can hurt it, so it's important to keep it healthy. Eating good food, drinking water, and getting enough sleep help the heart.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The heart pumps blood through blood to all body parts.
a) lungs b) vessels c) cans d) tubes
- To keep your heart healthy, you should get enough
a) sunlight b) air c) sleep d) sugar

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the text about?

.....

4. Why is it important to avoid stress?

.....

5. How can we help our heart stay healthy?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. the body - the heart - What - pump into - does - ?

2. our - Good - protect - body - habits - .

3. a strong - is - The heart - muscle - .

4. your body - Too - can - hurt - stress - much - .

5. our - heart - Water - is - for - good - .

6 Punctuate the following.

1. how can we keep our heart healthy

2. The heart s job is to pump blood

7 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

The heart

Guiding elements:

(organ - pumps - blood)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Life Savers in Action Think and Create

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

healthcare	الرعاية الصحية	doctor	طبيب
heroes	أبطال	nurse	ممرضة
emergency	حالة طوارئ	paramedic	مسعف
diagnose	يشخص	pharmacist	صيدلي
patients	مرضى	support	دعم - مساندة

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

workers	عاملين	safely	بأمان	meal	وجبة
illness	مرض	life - lives	حياة - حيوات	harmful	ضار
disease	مرض	kindness	عطف	habits	عادات
knowledge	معرفة	skill	مهارة	everyday	يومي
treatment	علاج	active	نشط	role	دور

Definitions

تعريفات

To work around the clock: to work for long hours without much rest

العمل على مدار الساعة: أن تعمل لساعات طويلة بدون الكثير من الراحة

To give help on the spot: To help immediately

تقديم المساعدة على الفور: المساعدة في الحال

To diagnose: to identify the cause of a problem or illness

يشخص: أن تتعرف على سبب المشكلة والمرض

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
encourage يشجع	encouraged	treat يعالج	treated
respond يستجيب	responded	receive يتلقى	received
provide يمد - يزود	provided	respect يحترم	respected
check يفحص	checked	spend يقضي «وقت»	spent

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

life savers in action	المتقذون أثناء أداء مهامهم	real-life heroes	أبطال حقيقيون
day and night	ليلاً ونهاراً	on the spot	في الحال / على الفور
give support	يقدم الدعم	play an important role	يلعب دوراً مهماً
make sure	يتأكد	give advice on	يقدم النصيحة بشأن
give help	يساعد - يمد يد العون	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
according to	طبقاً / وفقاً لـ	in emergencies	في حالات الطوارئ
care for	يعتني بـ		

How do you take care of your family when they are sick?

كيف تهتم بأسرتك عندما يكونون مرضى؟

1. Who are the healthcare workers in our community?

من هم العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية في مجتمعنا؟

Doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics.

الأطباء والمرضون والصيدالة والمسعفون.

2. What do doctors do?

ماذا يفعل الأطباء؟

They diagnose diseases and provide treatments

يقومون بتشخيص الأمراض وتقديم العلاجات.

3. What do nurses do?

ماذا يفعل المرصون؟

They give support and care for patients.

يقدمون الدعم والرعاية للمرضى.

4. What do pharmacists do?

ماذا يفعل الصيدالة؟

They make sure patients receive the correct medicine safely.

يتأكدون من حصول المرضى على الدواء الصحيح بأمان.

5. What do paramedics do?

ماذا يفعل المسعفون؟

They respond quickly in emergencies.

يستجيبون بسرعة في حالات الطوارئ.





Lessons (4 & 5)

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

أبطال الرعاية الصحية Healthcare Heroes

Healthcare workers—like doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics are real-life heroes who spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat illnesses. **Doctors** use their



knowledge and skills to check patients, **diagnose** diseases, and provide treatments. **Nurses** often work **around the clock** to give support and care for patients.

العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية — مثل الأطباء والممرضين والصيادلة والمسعفين — هم أبطال حقيقيون يقضون حياتهم لمساعدة الآخرين. يعملون ليلاً ونهاراً للحفاظ على صحة الناس وعلاج الأمراض. يستخدم الأطباء معرفتهم ومهاراتهم لفحص المرضى وتشخيص الأمراض وتقديم العلاجات. أما الممرضون، فيعملون غالباً على مدار الساعة لتقديم الدعم والرعاية للمرضى.

Pharmacists play a very important role, too. They make sure patients receive the correct medicine and give advice on how to use it safely. **Paramedics** respond quickly in emergencies. They give help **on the spot** and take patients safely to hospitals.

يلعب الصيادلة دوراً مهماً جداً أيضاً. فهم يتأكدون من حصول المرضى على الدواء الصحيح ويقدمون النصائح حول كيفية استخدامه بأمان. أما المسعفون فيستجيبون بسرعة في حالات الطوارئ، حيث يقدمون المساعدة على الفور وينقلون المرضى بأمان إلى المستشفيات.

Healthcare workers also help us live healthier lives as they encourage us to eat healthy meals, stay active, play sports, and stop harmful habits. These heroes work long hours with kindness. We should thank them by caring for our health and showing them respect. Healthcare workers are really our everyday heroes!

يساعدنا العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية أيضاً على عيش حياة أكثر صحة، حيث يشجعوننا على تناول وجبات صحية، والبقاء نشيطين، وممارسة الرياضة، والتوقف عن العادات الضارة. يعمل هؤلاء الأبطال لساعات طويلة بلطف. ويجب أن نشكرهم من خلال الاهتمام بصحتنا وإظهار الاحترام لهم. إن العاملين في مجال الرعاية الصحية هم حقاً أبطالنا في الحياة اليومية!



Writing skills

A Non-fiction text

نص حقيقي:

When you write a non-fiction text, ask yourself:

عندما تكتب نصًا حقيقيًا، اسأل نفسك:

Is the information true?

هل المعلومات صحيحة؟

Did I make anything up?

هل اختلقتُ أي شيء من عندي؟

Is my source reliable?

هل مصدري موثوق؟

Non-Fiction writing should include:

يجب أن تتضمن الكتابة الحقيقية:

1) An introductory sentence.

(١) جملة افتتاحية.

e.g. My neighbor, Selim, is a doctor at our local hospital.

2) Details that are all true.

(٢) تفاصيل كلها صحيحة.

e.g. He wears a white coat and carries a stethoscope around his neck.

3) Adjectives.

(٣) صفات.

e.g. "white", "big", "kind".

4) A closing sentence.

(٤) جملة ختامية.

e.g. The work is tiring, but he's proud to be a doctor.



Write a non-fiction text about one of healthcare persons.

اكتب نصًا غير خيالي عن أحد العاملين في مجال الرعاية الصحية.

Guiding elements:

1. Where do they work?

2- How do they help us?

3- Is their work hard? Why?

4- How can we thank them?

Doctors

My uncle Ahmed is a doctor at the local hospital. He wears a blue uniform and carries a stethoscope (سماعة طبية) around his neck. He is kind and always ready to help patients. Every day, he works hard to take care of sick people. He also gives medicine and checks on patients regularly. The work is not easy, but he feels happy and proud to help others. We should show respect to him.

Think and Create

A Poster

- Create a poster about six healthy habits

Stay Healthy!

1



Wash your hands
before and after eating

أغسل يديك قبل وبعد الأكل

2



Eat fruits and
vegetables regularly

تناول الفاكهة والخضروات بانتظام

3



Drink enough
water daily

اشرب قدرًا كافيًا من الماء يوميًا

4



Exercise regularly

مارس التمارين بانتظام

5



Sleep early and get
enough rest

نم مبكرًا واحصل على قدر كافٍ من الراحة

6



Brush your teeth daily
with toothpaste

اغسل أسنانك بالفرشاة يوميًا بمعجون أسنان



Tip

The Elements of a Good Poster are...

1. A clear Title (to grab the attention)
2. Organized Steps (to explain)
3. Photos or drawings (to illustrate)

عناصر الملصق الجيد هي...

- (١) عنوان واضح (لجذب الانتباه)
- (٢) خطوات منظمة (للتوضيح)
- (٣) صور أو رسومات (للشرح أو الإيضاح)

Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- diagnose diseases, and provide treatments.
a) Doctors b) Nurses c) Pharmacists d) Paramedics
- give support and care for patients.
a) Pharmacists b) Paramedics c) Doctors d) Nurses
- make sure the patients receive the correct medicine.
a) Pharmacists b) Paramedics c) Nurses d) Doctors
- respond quickly in emergencies.
a) Nurses b) Doctors c) Paramedics d) Pharmacists

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Doctors use their knowledge and to check patients.
a) books b) advice c) skills d) clothes
- Nurses often work around the to give support to patients.
a) house b) hospital c) clock d) class
- Pharmacists give on how to use medicine safely.
a) drinks b) advice c) games d) money
- Paramedics respond quickly in
a) games b) hospitals c) emergencies d) pharmacies
- Paramedics give help on the and take patients to hospitals.
a) bed b) street c) spot d) phone
- Healthcare workers help us live lives.
a) unkind b) healthier c) harder d) richer
- Healthcare workers encourage us to eat meals.
a) fast b) fried c) sweet d) healthy
- Healthcare heroes work long hours with
a) kindness b) machines c) rest d) food

Lessons (4 & 5)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

heroes - meals - sports - habits

Healthcare workers also help us live healthier lives as they encourage us to eat healthy 1), stay active, play 2), and stop harmful habits. These 3) work long hours with kindness. We should thank them.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics are real-life heroes. Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients, diagnose diseases, and provide treatments. Nurses often work around the clock to give care and support to patients. Pharmacists give advice on how to use medicine safely and make sure patients receive the correct medicine. Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies, giving help on the spot and taking patients safely to hospitals. These healthcare workers help us live healthier lives. We should respect them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Doctors help patients by diseases and giving treatments.
a) buying b) cooking c) diagnosing d) playing
- The underlined phrase "on the spot" means
a) immediately b) slowly c) badly d) well

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4. Who helps people stay healthy?

.....

5. How should we treat healthcare workers?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. real-life - are - heroes - Healthcare - workers - .
.....
2. their - Doctors - use - knowledge - patients - check - to - .
.....
3. work - Nurses - work - care for - patients - around - the clock - .
.....
4. safely - Paramedics - take - hospitals - to - patients - .
.....
5. healthy - encourage - us - to - eat - They - meals - .
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

1. we should respect doctors
.....
2. how can you stay healthy
.....

7 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Real heroes

Guiding elements:

(doctors - nurses - paramedics)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

heart	قلب	muscle	عضلة	energy	طاقة
lungs	الرئتان	fit	لائق بدنياً	mental health	الصحة العقلية
stressed	متوتر	habits	عادات	vitamins	فيتامينات
soda	صودا (مشروبات غازية)	snack	وجبة خفيفة	healthcare	الرعاية الصحية
diagnose	يشخص	patients	مرضى	in emergencies	في حالات الطوارئ
organs	أعضاء الجسم	fist	قبضة اليد	pump blood	يضخ الدم
paramedic	مسعف	nutrients	مواد مغذية	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
doctor	طبيب	exercise	يمارس تمارين رياضية	hurt	يضر
pharmacist	صيدلي	nurse	ممرضة	oxygen	الأكسجين

Pronunciation

One syllable words

bread	خبز	tree	شجرة	fish	سمكة
run	يجري	jump	يقفز	pot	إناء
hat	قبعة	feed	يطعم	cut	يقطع

Language (Using a / an / some / any)

نستخدم «a» قبل الأسماء المفردة التي تعد وتبدأ بصوت ساكن.

e.g. I eat a banana every day.

نستخدم «an» قبل الأسماء المفردة التي تعد وتبدأ بصوت متحرك.

e.g. She eats an egg in the morning.

نستخدم «some» مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد في الجمل المثبتة.

e.g. I have some apples.

e.g. She drank some water.

نستخدم «any» مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد في النفي والاستفهام.

e.g. There aren't any apples left.

e.g. Do you have any water?



Writing Corner

● Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Sports for better health

Sports make the heart and muscles strong, increase energy, and help us lose weight. Swimming strengthens the lungs. Healthy habits improve physical and mental health. Good habits help us sleep better, and reduce stress.

Adam's healthy habits

Adam changed his habits. He now wakes up early, exercises, plays football, eats fruits and vegetables, and drinks water instead of soda. His family also grills food, eats dinner early, and goes for walks.

Our heart

The heart pumps blood with oxygen and nutrients. It's important to eat well, sleep enough, drink water, and exercise to keep it healthy. Too much stress can harm the heart, but exercise keeps it strong.

Healthcare Heroes

Doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics are real-life heroes. They help people stay healthy. For example, doctors diagnose and treat illnesses. They work hard and give advice. They encourage healthy habits. We should respect them. They are real-life heroes in our community.

Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

قلب	يزيد
عضلة	يقلل
الرئتان	يتدرب
مرهق - متعب	عقلي
لائق بدنياً	الصحة
بانتظام	مضغوط

Lesson (2)

عادات	وجبة خفيفة
فيتامينيات	برجر
صودا	عقل
رحلة	حلويات
طاقة	نزهة
تلاجة	تمشية

Lesson (3)

عضلة	بضخ الدم
عضو في الجسم	أوكسجين
قبضة يد	أنابيب
أوعية دموية	الضغط
تدريب	مواد مغذية
فضلات	قنوات
أجزاء	خلايا

Lessons (4 & 5)

العناية بالصحة	طبيب
أبطال	مرمضة
يفحص	صيدلي
مرضى	مسعف

Activities On Unit 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- play a very important role.
a) Pharmacists b) Cleaners c) Paramedics d) Teachers
- Pharmacists make sure that patients receive the correct
a) medicine b) juice c) water d) drinks
- Paramedics respond quickly in
a) the cinema b) the bank c) emergencies d) the club
- Paramedics give help on the
a) star b) sport c) spot d) school

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- are the parts of your body that help you move.
a) Hearts b) Ears c) Skin d) Muscles
- Lungs are the organs in your chest that help you
a) think b) move c) breathe d) eat
- Stressed is when you feel unhappy or
a) happy b) pleased c) relaxed d) tired

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vitamins - fruits - friends - burger

I used to watch TV all day, but now I play football with 1)..... every Saturday. Before, I loved chips, burgers, and sweets. Now, I eat more 2)..... and vegetables, which give me important 3)..... . My favorite snacks are apples, bananas, and carrots.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us alive. Too much stress can hurt your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy. You can take care of your heart by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking a lot of water. Also, exercise helps your heart pump better and keeps you from getting sick. If you follow these tips, your heart will stay strong. It may be small, but it is very powerful!

Activities On Unit (2)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The heart is a strong that keeps us alive.
a) muscle b) stress c) water d) sleep
2. The underlined word "strong" is opposite to
a) happy b) weak c) sad d) power

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What helps your heart pump better?
4. How can you take care of your heart?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. patients - their - use - Doctors - knowledge - to check - .
.....

2. apples - for - Talia - the picnic - some - buy - will - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I want to buy (any) grapes.
2. They played with (a) orange ball.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. how do healthcare heroes help us
2. she eats an egg in the morning

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

How to keep your heart healthy

Guiding elements:

(good food - sleeping - exercise)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

swimming - stronger - sports - heart

- Mazen : Why is it important to play 1)..... ?
 Mom : To stay healthy.
 Mazen : So if I play football, will I be 2)..... ?
 Mom : Yes, it makes your 3)..... strong.
 Mazen : What about 4)..... ?
 Mom : Swimming is very good, too.

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

care for - help - hospitals - patients

- Ali : Where do doctors work?
 Amr : They work in 1).....
 Ali : How do they 2)..... people?
 Amr : They check 3).....
 Ali : What about nurses?
 Amr : They give support and 4)..... patients.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- Sports make your strong.
 a) message b) heart c) breath d) stress
- Adam drinks a lot of water instead of
 a) air b) sand c) oil d) soda
- respond quickly in emergencies.
 a) Doctors b) Nurses c) Paramedics d) Pharmacists
- Is there orange juice left in the fridge?
 a) a b) an c) any d) some
- Omar will buy apples for the picnic.
 a) a b) some c) any d) an

Unit 3

When Nature Changes

عندما تتغير الطبيعة



Learning Outcomes

Describe different weather conditions

صف حالات الطقس المختلفة

Speaking Talk about past events using the past simple tense

تحدث عن أحداث ماضية باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط

Recognize and repeat vowel digraph in common words

ميز بين الأصوات المتحركة المتشابهة في الكلمات الشائعة ورددتها

Answer comprehension questions on extreme weather conditions

Reading اجب عن أسئلة لفهم نصوص حول الظواهر الجوية القاسية

Identify elements (characters and moral) in a fictional story

حدد عناصر القصة مثل (الشخصيات والعبرة) في قصة خيالية

Answer questions based on conversations about environmental changes

Listening اجب عن أسئلة تتعلق بمحادثات حول التغيرات البيئية

Identify vocabulary related to weather in a listening text

تعرف على مفردات مرتبطة بالطقس من خلال نص استماع

Complete sentences using the past simple tense correctly

Writing اكمل الجمل باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط بشكل صحيح

Write a fiction story

اكتب قصة خيالية

Lesson (1)

Weather Wonders and Warnings!

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



thunderstorm

عاصفة رعدية



sandstorm

عاصفة رملية



flood

فيضان



drought

جفاف



wildfire

حرائق الغابات



heat wave

موجة حر

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

wonders

عجائب warning

تحذير

lightning

البرق mountains

جبال

news

أخبار crops

محاصيل

damaged

دُمِر - تَضَرَّر awful

فظيع

dust

تراب forest

غابة

temperature

درجة الحرارة strike

يضرب

terrible

فظيع planet

كوكب

outside

بالخارج dangerous

خطير

inside

بالداخل dangerously

بطريقة خطيرة

safe

آمن village

قرية

dry

جاف wet

مبتل

during

أثناء weather

الطقس

Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
cover يغطي	covered	burn يحترق	burned
flood يفيض	flooded	affect يؤثر	affected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hear يسمع	heard	spread ينتشر	spread
see يرى	saw	lose يفقد	lost
grow يزرع	grew	hit يضرب	hit

Definitions

تعريفات

A wildfire	burns through forests and homes.	حرائق الغابات
A thunderstorm	is when children are afraid of the lightning.	عاصفة رعدية
A sandstorm	is a severe wind that carries sand and dust through the air making it hard to breathe.	عاصفة رملية
A flood	is when there's too much water covering dry land.	فيضان
A heat wave	the temperature is dangerously high for days.	موجة حارة
A drought	happens when there is no rain for a long time.	جفاف

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

severe wind رياح شديدة	got stuck عالق
had to stay كان عليه البقاء	burned down احترقت
What a pity! يا للأسف!	grow food يزرع الغذاء
for a long time لمدة طويلة	afraid of خائف من
for days / months لبضعة (أيام / شهور)	close to قريب من
prevent from يمنع من	hear about يسمع عن

Listen and read.

When Nature Strikes!

عندما تضرب الطبيعة!

Mazen Dina, did you hear about the **flood** in our city last week? It was terrible.

دينا، هل سمعت عن الفيضان الذي حدث في مدينتنا الأسبوع الماضي؟

لقد كان فظيلاً.

Dina Yes, Mazen! I saw it on the news. The water covered the streets, and many cars got stuck. It looked scary.



نعم، يا مازن! شاهدت ذلك في الأخبار. غمرت المياه الشوارع وعلقت العديد من السيارات. كان المشهد مخيفاً.

Mazen Yes, my uncle's house was **damaged**. The water flooded his living room, and he had to stay with us for a few days.

نعم، لقد تضرر منزل عمي. فقد غمرت المياه غرفة معيشتي، واضطر إلى البقاء معنا لبضعة أيام.

Dina That's so sad. I hope he's okay now. Floods are terrible. And now there's a **drought** — **no rain** in China for months! Farmers can't grow crops because there's no water.

هذا محزن جداً. أأمل أن يكون بخير الآن. الفيضانات مرعبة. والآن هناك جفاف — لم تهطل الأمطار في الصين منذ شهور!

المزارعون عاجزون عن زراعة المحاصيل بسبب نقص المياه.

Mazen Yes, droughts are awful! The land gets so dry that animals can't find water. And I heard that a **wildfire** is spreading in the forest in U.S.A.

نعم، فترات الجفاف مروعة! تجف الأرض للدرجة أن الحيوانات لا تجد ماءً لتشربه. وقد سمعت أن حريقاً هائلاً ينتشر

في إحدى الغابات في الولايات المتحدة.

Dina Oh no! Is it close to the mountains?

يا إلهي! هل هو قريب من الجبال؟

Lesson (1)

Mazen Yes, and it spreads quickly because it's dry there, and the winds are so strong. Sadly, many trees **burned** down, and animals lost their homes.

نعم، وهو ينتشر بسرعة لأن المنطقة جافة والرياح شديدة جدًا. وللأسف، احترقت العديد من الأشجار، وفقدت الحيوانات مواطنها.

Dina What a pity! Let's learn more about how we can stay safe and help our planet.

يا للأسف! دعنا نتعلم المزيد عن كيفية الحفاظ على سلامتنا والمساعدة في حماية كوكبنا.

 **Listen again and answer.** استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

1. What happened in Mazen and Dina's city last week?

2. How did the flood affect Mazen's uncle?

3. What can Mazen and Dina do to help the planet?

Look, read and learn.

انظر، واقرأ وتعلم.



In this picture, there is a heat wave. The man is feeling very hot.

في هذه الصورة، هناك موجة حر. يشعر الرجل بحر شديد.



In this picture, there is a wildfire. The trees are burning down.

في هذه الصورة، هناك حريق غابات. الأشجار تحترق بالكامل.



In this picture, there is a drought. The land is dry. There is no water for a long time.

في هذه الصورة، هناك جفاف. الأرض جافة، ولا يوجد ماء منذ فترة طويلة.

Activities On Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A spread quickly in the forest in U.S.A.
a) wildfire b) heat wave c) storm d) wind
2. The wildfire was close to the
a) rivers b) seas c) mountains d) clouds
3. The wildfire spread quickly because it was there.
a) cold b) hot c) wet d) dry
4. The winds were so
a) weak b) strong c) fit d) happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A lot of trees burned down in a
a) wildfire b) flood c) drought d) heat
2. During a, the weather is very hot.
a) heat wave b) rain c) flood d) storm
3. A can prevent farmers from growing food.
a) drought b) planet c) desert d) forest
4. I was in my car during the flood. I couldn't move.
a) hit b) stuck c) burned d) spread
5. The wildfire quickly in the forest.
a) spread b) covered c) made d) found
6. I heard on the that there was a bad storm in the village.
a) sand b) village c) mountain d) news
7. Medhat's house was after the storm hit it.
a) covered b) protected c) damaged d) grown
8. To save our, we must keep it clean.
a) planet b) flood c) plant d) drought
9. Farmers can't grow because there's no water.
a) crops b) dust c) sand d) river

Lesson (1)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

stay - damaged - water - spread

There was a bad flood in our city. The 1) covered the streets. My uncle's house was 2) The water flooded the living room and he had to 3) with us.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. about - you - Did - hear - the flood - ?

2. can't - The animals - find - to drink - water - .

3. the mountains - close to - was - A wildfire - .

4. in the - flood - house - My uncle's - was - damaged - .

5 Punctuate the following.

- there was a flood in the city last week

6 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

The weather in your city

Guiding elements:

(flood - streets - stuck)

Lesson (2)

Extreme Weather in Ancient Egypt

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	irrigation system	نظام ري
weather	الطقس	sandstorms (khamasin)	عواصف رملية (رياح الخماسين)
rich soil	تربة غنية (خصبة)	hot winds	رياح ساخنة
damage	يدمر - دمار - تلف	smart ways	طرق ذكية
basins	أحواض	mud bricks	الطوب اللبن

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

low	منخفض	canals	قنوات
possible	ممکن	land	أرض
thick	سميك	farm	مزرعة
machines	آلات	farming	الزراعة
fields	حقول	safe	آمن

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
survive ينجو - يحيا	survived
control يتحكم	controlled
breathe يتنفس	breathed
solve يحل	solved
protect يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
bring يُحضر - يجلب	brought
build يبني	built
become يصبح	became
have يملك	had
give يعطي	gave

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

bring problems	يجلب المشاكل	enough rain	مطر كافٍ
the water became low	انخفض منسوب المياه	protect from	يحمي من
splash water on	يرش الماء على	simple tools	أدوات بسيطة
keep away from	يبتعد عن	stay indoors	يبقى في الداخل

Lesson (2)

Read the text.

The Weather in Ancient Egypt الطقس في مصر القديمة

Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible, even in the desert. The Nile River gave water and rich soil, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the weather also brought problems like floods, droughts, and sandstorms.



جعل الطقس في مصر القديمة الزراعة أمراً ممكناً، حتى في الصحراء. فقد وفّر نهر النيل المياه والتربة الخصبة، مما ساعد على نمو المحاصيل. لكن في بعض الأحيان، جلب الطقس مشكلات مثل الفيضانات، والجفاف، والعواصف الرملية.

Floods: The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich soil to the land, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the floods were too strong and damaged farms. To stop this, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins to control the water and spread it over their fields.

الفيضانات: كان نهر النيل يفيض كل عام، وكانت مياهه تجلب التربة الغنية إلى الأراضي، مما ساعد على نمو المحاصيل. لكن في بعض الأحيان، كانت الفيضانات شديدة جداً وتسبب في تدمير المزارع. ولمنع ذلك، بنى المصريون القدماء قنوات وأحواضاً للتحكم في المياه وتوزيعها على حقولهم.

Droughts: Droughts happened when there was not enough rain. The Nile's water became low, and the land became dry. Crops could not grow. To solve this, the Ancient Egyptians made irrigation systems to bring water to their fields.

الجفاف: كان الجفاف يحدث عندما لا تهطل الأمطار بكميات كافية، فينخفض منسوب مياه النيل وتجف الأرض. فلا تنمو المحاصيل. ولحل هذه المشكلة، أنشأ المصريون القدماء أنظمة ري لنقل المياه إلى حقولهم.

Sandstorms: Sandstorms, called *Khamsin*, brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and breathe. People stayed inside to stay safe. They built their homes with thick mud bricks to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

العواصف الرملية: كانت العواصف الرملية، المعروفة باسم «رياح الخماسين»، تجلب رياحاً قوية وحارة محملة بالرمال. وكان من الصعب الرؤية أو التنفس خلالها، لذا كان الناس يلتزمون منازلهم حفاظاً على سلامتهم. وقد بنوا بيوتهم من الطوب اللين السميك لحمايتهم من الرياح والرمال.

Unit (3)

The Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern machines, but they found **smart** ways to survive. **They worked hard**, used simple tools, and protected themselves from heat, sand, and floods.

لم يكن لدى المصريين القدماء آلات حديثة، لكنهم وجدوا طرقاً ذكية للبقاء على قيد الحياة. عملوا بجهد، واستخدموا أدوات بسيطة، وحملوا أنفسهم من الحرارة والرمل والفيضانات.



Read again and answer.

اقرأ مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

1. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to bring water to their crops during droughts?
.....
2. What did the Ancient Egyptians do to stop the flood damage?
.....
3. Describe the weather in Ancient Egypt.
.....

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.



When there is a heat wave, I have cool drinks. What do you do?

عندما تكون هناك موجة حرة، أتناول مشروبات باردة. ماذا تفعل أنت؟

I stay in the shade and wear a hat! I, also, splash water on my face to cool down. What do you do during a thunderstorm?

أبقى في الظل وأرتدي قبعة! أيضاً، أرش الماء على وجهي لكي أبرد نفسي. ماذا تفعل أثناء العاصفة الرعدية؟

I stay indoors and keep away from windows.

أبقى في الداخل وأبتعد عن النوافذ.



Lesson (2)

Language In Use

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use the **past simple** to talk about finished actions or events in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأفعال التي انتهت في الماضي.

e.g. In ancient Egypt, the Nile River **flooded** every year.

Form التكوين

1) Regular verbs

1 أفعال منتظمة تتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) إلى الفعل.

play → played

smile → smiled

cry → cried

2) Irregular verbs

2 أفعال غير منتظمة وتحفظ كما هي.

go → went

eat → ate

buy → bought

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	بالأمس	in the past	في الماضي
last	الماضي / السابق	in + (2020,)	في «عام ماضي»
ago	منذ	Once	ذات مرة

e.g. I **saw** my friends **last week**.

Negative النفي

Subject (فاعل) + **did not (didn't)** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. The Ancient Egyptians **didn't have** modern tools to help them.

Question السؤال

Yes / No question:

Did + **subject** (فاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + **....?**

e.g. **Did** you **play** tennis yesterday? - Yes, I **did**. - No, I **didn't**.

Wh- question

Q.W + did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)?

e.g. What **did** the Ancient Egyptians **do** when the river flooded?

Verb to (be) in the past**Form** التكوين

(I / He / She / It / A singular noun) + was

e.g. I **was** happy **yesterday**.

(We / You / They / A plural noun) + were

e.g. They **were** at the club a week **ago**.

Negative النفي

(I / He / She / It / A singular noun) + was not (wasn't)

e.g. Droughts happened when there **wasn't** enough rain.

(We / You / They / A plural noun) + were not (weren't)

e.g. We **weren't** at the cinema **yesterday**.

Question السؤال

Yes / No question:

Was / Were + subject (فاعل) + باقي الجملة?

e.g. **Were** there sandstorms in the past?

- Yes, there **were**.

- No, there **weren't**.

Wh- question

Q.W + was / were + subject (فاعل) + باقي الجملة?

e.g. **Why were** they at the club **yesterday**?



Practice on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Ancient Egypt rich soil from the Nile River every year.
a) got b) gets c) get d) getting
2. The floods sometimes the farms in the past.
a) damaged b) damage c) damaging d) damages
3. The Ancient Egyptians canals to stop floods long ago.
a) built b) build c) building d) builds
4. They modern machines in the past.
a) didn't have b) haven't c) don't have d) doesn't have
5. The Nile River water to the fields long ago.
a) gave b) give c) gives d) giving
6. The farmers hard to protect their farms.
a) worked b) has worked c) working d) works
7. Sandstorms strong, hot winds yesterday.
a) brought b) bring c) brings d) bringing
8. Did the Ancient Egyptians irrigation systems in the past?
a) uses b) used c) using d) use

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Did people (stays) safe from the wind?
2. Ancient Egyptians (doesn't) have modern machines in the past.
3. Did Ancient Egyptians (used) irrigation systems?
4. The Nile River (give) water to the fields long ago.
5. They (work) hard to protect their farms in the past.
6. People didn't (stayed) outdoors during sandstorms.
7. Sandstorms (brings) hot winds yesterday.
8. The floods (damage) the farms last year.
9. Ancient Egyptians (builds) canals.
10. The land (become) dry last season.

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Ancient had weather that made farming possible.
a) Egypt b) China c) U.S.A d) Syria
- The Nile River gave water and soil.
a) expensive b) poor c) rich d) fine
- The rich soil helped crops
a) make b) build c) work d) grow
- Sometimes the weather brought problems like
a) clubs b) floods c) foods d) fruits

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The floods brought water and to the land.
a) sand b) rich soil c) rocks d) heat
- Droughts made the Nile's water
a) soil b) spread c) high d) low
- The homes protected the Ancient Egyptians from sandstorms.
a) mud bricks b) wood c) pyramids d) metal
- The Ancient Egyptians found smart ways to
a) damage b) breathe c) run d) survive
- Ancient Egypt had that made farming possible even in the desert.
a) weather b) dust c) sand d) homes
- The Nile River every year, bringing water to the land.
a) flooded b) breathed c) worked d) solved
- The water brought rich soil to the land, helping crops
a) stay b) fall c) grow d) cut
- Sometimes the floods were too strong and farms.
a) damaged b) built c) stored d) gave

Lesson (2)

9. To floods, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins.
a) stop b) work c) see d) breathe
10. happened when there was not enough rain.
a) Droughts b) Floods c) Storms d) Wind

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

hot - floods - worked - smart

The Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern machines, but they found
1) ways to survive. They 2) hard, used simple tools,
and protected themselves from heat, sand, and 3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egypt's weather allowed farming even in the desert. The Nile River provided water and rich soil that helped crops grow. However, floods sometimes damaged farms, so Egyptians built canals and basins to control water. Droughts happened when there was little rain, making the land dry, so they created irrigation systems. Sandstorms brought hot winds and sand, making it hard to see and breathe. Egyptians stayed indoors and built homes from mud bricks for protection.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile River gave water and soil to help crops grow.
a) rich b) hot c) dry d) mud
2. The underlined word "rich" is opposite to
a) big b) small c) poor d) sad

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How did Egyptians protect themselves from sandstorms?

4. What did the Nile River provide to help crops grow?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. River - The Nile - flooded - year - every - .
.....
2. build - Egyptians - Did - the Ancient - canals - ?
.....
3. the forest - spreading - The wildfire - is - in - .
.....
4. in the flood - house - My - uncle's - was - damaged - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They (visit) the zoo last weekend.
2. I (am) so excited about my trip two days ago.
3. (Do) the teacher give us homework last Monday?
4. Why didn't you (went) to school yesterday?
5. We (have) a big house two years ago.
6. Where (was) your parents yesterday?

7 Punctuate the following.

- ancient Egypt had good weather
.....

8 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Weather in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(farming - flood - basins)
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lesson (3) Story Time: The Two Frogs

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

pond	بركة ماء	well	بئر	fly - flies	ذباب - ذباب
safely	بأمان	leap	يقفز	frog	ضفدع

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

area	منطقة	lake	بحيرة	deep	عميق
insect	حشرة	wings	أجنحة	ground	أرض
thin	رفيع	danger	خطر	movement	حركة
quiet	هادئ	home	منزل - موطن	edge	حافة - طرف
hole	فتحة - ثقب	bottom	قاع	instead	بدلاً من ذلك

Definitions

تعريفات

pond	an area of water, usually smaller than a lake	بركة ماء
well	a deep hole dug in the ground to find water	بئر
flies	small insects with two thin, small wings	ذباب
safely	protected from danger	بأمان
leap	to jump high and far in one big movement	يقفز

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
agree	يوافق agreed	dig	يحفر dug
rest	يرتاح rested	leave	يترك - يغادر left
leap	يقفز leaped / leapt	think	يفكر thought

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

catch flies	يصطاد ذباب	under the warm sun	تحت الشمس الدافئة
extremely hot	حار للغاية	protect from	يحمي من
keep leaping	يستمر في القفز	dry up	يجف
a deep well	بئر عميق	for a moment	للحظة
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	look / search for	يبحث عن
make a choice	يختار	decide to	يقرر أن

Read the listen.

Once upon a time, in a small and quiet village, there were two frogs who were best friends.

They lived together in a small pond near the edge of the village.

The pond was their home, and they loved it very much. Every day, they had fun catching flies, swimming in the cool water, and resting under the warm sun.



في قديم الزمان، في قرية صغيرة وهادئة، كان هناك ضفدعان صديقان حميمان. كانا يعيشان معًا في بركة صغيرة تقع عند أطراف القرية. كانت البركة بيتهما، وكانا يحبانها كثيرًا. كل يوم كانا يستمتعان بصيد الذباب، والسباحة في الماء البارد، والاسترخاء تحت دفء الشمس.

One summer, the weather became extremely hot. The sun was strong, and the pond started to dry up. The frogs got worried. They knew they couldn't stay in the pond any longer because there wasn't enough water for them. They decided to leave the pond and look for a new home where they could live safely.

لكن في أحد فصول الصيف، أصبح الطقس شديد الحرارة. اشتدت الشمس وجفت مياه البركة تدريجيًا، ف شعر الضفدعان بالقلق. علما أنه لم يعد بإمكانهما البقاء في البركة، لأن الماء لم يعد كافيًا لهما. لذا قررا مغادرة البركة والبحث عن منزل جديد حيث يمكنهما العيش بأمان.

The two frogs leaped through fields and grass, looking for another pond. After a long time, they saw a deep well. One of the frogs said, "This well looks like a great place for us to live! The water is cool, and it's very deep. We can swim here all day."

قفز الضفدعان عبر الحقول وبين الأعشاب، باحثين عن بركة أخرى. وبعد وقت طويل من البحث، وجدا بئرًا عميقًا. فقال أحدهما: «يبدو هذا البئر مكانًا رائعًا لتعيش فيه! فالماء بارد، والبئر عميق، يمكننا السباحة فيه طوال اليوم.»

The other frog thought for a moment and said, "The water is nice now, but what if it dries up one day? If that happens, we will get stuck at the bottom of the well, and we won't be able to get out."

فكر الضفدع الآخر قليلًا، ثم قال: «الماء جميل الآن، لكن ماذا لو جفت البئر في يومًا ما؟ إذا حدث ذلك، سنعلق في قاع البئر ولن نستطيع الخروج.»

The first frog thought about what his friend said, then agreed. They decided not to live in the well. Instead, they kept leaping and searching for a safe home.

فكر الضفدع الأول في كلام صديقه، ثم وافقه الرأي. وقررا ألا يسكنا في البئر، وواصلوا القفز والبحث عن بيت آمن لهما.



Pronunciation

Vowel digraph

A vowel digraph: is when two vowels appear together and make just one sound.

ثنائي الحروف المتحركة المزدوجة (حروف العلة): هو حالة يأتي فيها حرفان متحركان معًا ويصدران صوتًا واحدًا فقط.

Examples:

leap: in "leap," the 'ea' makes the long 'e' sound.

الحرفان «ea» في كلمة «leap» يصدران صوت /e/ الطويل.

flood: in "flood," the 'oo' makes a short 'u' sound.

الحرفان «oo» في كلمة «flood» يصدران صوت /u/ القصير.

boat: in "boat," the 'oa' makes a long 'o' sound.

الحرفان «oa» في كلمة «boat» يصدران صوت /o/ الطويل.

أمثلة أكثر على ثنائي الحروف المتحركة المزدوجة

long /e/		short /o/		long /o/	
read	يقرأ	foot	قدم	goat	ماعز
hear	يسمع	book	كتاب	boat	قارب

Listen and notice the vowel digraph in the following sentences.

1. I like to eat green peas.
2. We read two books last week.
3. The gazelle leaped over the small stream.
4. The heavy flood covered the roads.

Fill in the blanks.

meet - boat - weak - floods

1. The sailed across the lake.
2. It's nice to my teacher at the break.
3. The made the plants

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- There were two who were best friends.
a) cats b) dogs c) frogs d) ducks
- They lived together in a small
a) pond b) well c) pool d) home
- The pond was near the edge of the
a) well b) lake c) city d) village
- They the pond very much.
a) jumped b) loved c) changed d) leaped

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- "....." are small insects with two thin, small wings.
a) Wings b) Flies c) Wells d) Ponds
- "....." is to jump high and far in one big movement.
a) Play b) Leap c) Go d) Dig
- A is a deep hole dug in the ground to find water.
a) well b) will c) pond d) sea
- The two frogs lived together in a small near the village.
a) pond b) river c) lake d) sea
- Every day, the frogs had fun catching
a) flies b) camels c) birds d) fish
- One summer, the weather became extremely
a) hot b) cold c) rainy d) cloudy
- The sun was strong, and the pond started to
a) dry up b) jump c) dig d) affect
- The frogs decided to leave the pond and find a new
a) home b) tree c) friend d) game

Lesson (3)

9. The frogs through fields and grass.
a) swam b) wrote c) read d) leaped
10. After a long time, the frogs saw a deep
a) well b) home c) house d) forest
11. The water in the well was cool and it was very
a) deep b) high c) hot d) warm
12. The other frog thought that they might get in the deep well.
a) stuck b) free c) safe d) happy

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

deep - pond - well - home

Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in a pond any longer. So, they decided to look for a new 1) After a long time, they saw a 2) well. One of the frogs said, "This 3) looks like a great place for us to live! But the other frog thought it wasn't safe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Two frogs lived in a small pond near the village and enjoyed their days. One summer, the weather became very hot and the pond dried up. They searched for a new home and found a deep well. One frog wanted to stay, but the other was worried they might get stuck if the well dried up. They decided not to live in the well and kept looking for a safe home.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The frogs lived in a small near the village.
a) pond b) well c) river d) tree
2. The underlined word "They" refers to the
a) ponds b) homes c) wells d) frogs

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where did the frogs live at first?
4. What happened to the pond in summer?
5. How was the weather in summer?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. frogs - a small - Two - lived - in - pond - .
.....
2. their - They - home - loved - much - very - .
.....
3. fields - frogs - through - grass - The - leaped - and - .
.....
4. the bottom - at - stuck - will - They - get - .
.....
5. decided - not - live - to - They - well - in the - .
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

1. the frogs saw a deep well
.....
2. how can the frogs live in the pond
.....

7 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Frogs

Guiding elements:

(pond - jump - eat)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing: Once Upon My Imagination Think and Create

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

sunshine	شروق الشمس	flip	يتقلب
upside down	رأساً على عقب - مقلوبة	clap	يصفق
whisper	همس - تهمس	kindness	عطف

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

cozy	مريح	gentle	لطيف
fluffy	خفيف وناعم	imagination	خيال
strange	غريب	magically	بطريقة سحرية
float	يطفو	bright	لامع - ساطع
hard	صعب - بجد	sides	جوانب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
fix	fixed	say	said
cry	cried	begin	began
remember	remembered	show	showed
get	got	shine	shone

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

sunny morning	صباح مشمس	fluffy clouds	سحب ناعمة وخفيفة
look out	ينظر من	one by one	واحدة تلو الأخرى
Once upon a time	ذات مرة	in a cozy little house	في بيت صغير ومريح
turn over	يتقلب	with joy	بفرحة
a little bit of	مقدار قليل من	turn right side up	يتحول إلى الوضع الصحيح

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

Do you think gentle whispers might change things?!

هل تعتقد أن الهمسات اللطيفة قد تغير الأمور؟

Lily's flowers get sunshine!

Once upon a time, in a cozy little house, lived a girl named Lily. One sunny morning, Lily looked out her window and saw something strange. Big, fluffy clouds were floating **upside down**! "Oh no!" she cried. "How will my flowers get sunshine if the clouds are upside down?"

في يوم من الأيام، في منزل صغير ومريح، عاشت فتاة تدعى ليلي. في صباح مشمس، نظرت ليلي من نافذتها ورأت شيئاً غريباً. كانت السحب الكبيرة والناعمة تطفو وهي مقلوبة! صاحت ليلي «يا إلهي! كيف ستحصل زهوري على أشعة الشمس إذا كانت السحب مقلوبة؟»



Lily thought hard. She remembered her grandma saying that sometimes, a gentle **whisper** could fix things. So, Lily opened her window and whispered, "Please, dear clouds, turn **right side up**!" Slowly and magically, the clouds began to **flip**. One by one, they turned over, showing their bright, sunny sides. Lily **clapped** her hands with joy. The sun shone brightly, and the flowers smiled. Lily knew that even big problems could be solved with a little bit of kindness and a gentle whisper.

فكرت ليلي كثيراً. تذكرت أن جدتها كانت تقول لها إن الهمسات اللطيفة قد تحل الأمور أحياناً. ففتحت ليلي نافذتها وهمست قائلة: «من فضلكم، أيها السحب، ارجعوا إلى وضعكم الصحيح!» وببطء، وبطريقة سحرية، بدأت السحب تنقلب. واحدة تلو الأخرى، تحولت، وأظهرت جوانبها المشمسة والمضيئة. صفقت ليلي بيدها فرحاً. سطعت الشمس، وابتسمت الزهور. كانت ليلي تعلم أن حتى المشاكل الكبيرة يمكن حلها بقليل من اللطف وهمسة لطيفة.

Lessons (4 & 5)



Writing skills

Fiction

قصة خيالية:

How to write a fiction story:

كيف تكتب قصة خيالية:

Fiction

Fiction story is a made-up story created from the imagination, not based on real things that happened

القصة الخيالية هي قصة مُختَلقة تم إنشاؤها من الخيال، وليست مبنية على أحداث حقيقية حدثت.

Plot

الحبكة (تحتوي على):

Beginning: Meet the characters and setting

البداية: التعرف على الشخصيات والمكان

Problem: Something goes wrong

المشكلة: يحدث خطأ ما

Middle: The character tries to fix it

المنتصف: الشخصية تحاول حل المشكلة

Climax: The most exciting part

الذروة: الجزء الأكثر إثارة

Ending: The problem is solved

النهاية: يتم حل المشكلة



Model

Title: Ziad and the Strange Discovery

Beginning:

One day, a boy named Ziad found something strange near his house.

Problem:

But then, something unexpected happened that changed everything. He saw a strong box and didn't know what it was.

Middle:

Ziad tried different ways to open it, but nothing seemed to work at first. He pressed buttons, opened it carefully, and even asked his friends for help.

Climax:

Just when it seemed impossible, something big happened! The box suddenly opened and there was a map inside.

Ending:

In the end, Ziad learned that curiosity (فضول) can lead to amazing discoveries and adventures.

Think and Create A Collage

- Read below to make your own collage.

First

Find and cut out photos of many different weather conditions.

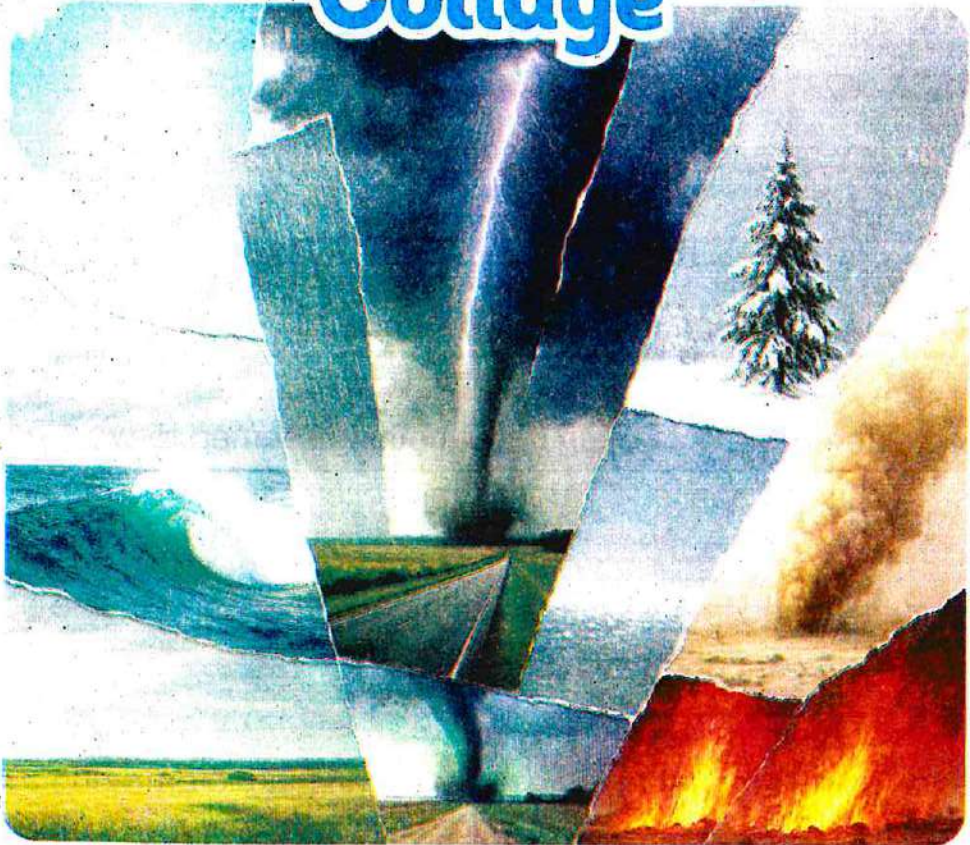
ابحث وقم بقص صور لعدة حالات جوية مختلفة.

Then

Glue them together. (the pictures are allowed to overlap)

الصقهم معاً. (يسمح بتداخل الصور)

Collage



Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Lily lived in a cozy little
 a) house b) garden c) farm d) park
2. She looked out of her
 a) door b) window c) bed d) room
3. The clouds were upside down.
 a) running b) swimming c) floating d) flooding
4. The didn't get sunshine.
 a) side b) clap c) flag d) flowers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Big, fluffy clouds were floating down!
 a) upside b) right c) side d) bright
2. I live in a little house.
 a) photo b) cozy c) noise d) beauty
3. A gentle could fix things.
 a) whisper b) shout c) laugh d) cry
4. 'Please, dear clouds, turn right up!'
 a) side b) time c) bright d) kind
5. Slowly and magically, the clouds began to
 a) flip b) play c) cry d) shine
6. Lily her hands with joy.
 a) clapped b) cried c) opened d) closed
7. The sun shone
 a) brightly b) lazily c) slowly d) darkly
8. Big problems could be solved with
 a) kindness b) anger c) fear d) noise

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Lily lived in a cozy house. One morning, she saw clouds floating upside down and she got worried because her flowers wouldn't get sunshine. She remembered her grandma's words about gentle whispers. Lily opened her window, whispered to the clouds, and asked them to turn right side up. Magically, the clouds flipped, the sun shone, and the flowers smiled. Lily learned that kindness and gentle whispers can solve even big problems.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Lily saw clouds floating down.
a) upside b) right c) bright d) kind
- She learned that problems can be solved with
a) kindness b) anger c) noise d) fear

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is the main idea of the text?
- What does the underlined pronoun "she" refer to?
- Who told Lily about gentle whispers?

4 Punctuate the following.

- lily clapped her hands

5 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Kindness

Guiding elements:

(good - gentle - solve)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Review on Unit (3)

Vocabulary

thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	stuck	عالق	pond	بركة مياه
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	weather	الطقس	well	بئر
flood	فيضان	rich soil	تربة غنية (خصبة)	flies	ذباب
wildfire	حرائق الغابات	breathe	يتنفس	safely	بأمان
heat wave	موجة حارة	smart	ذكي	leap	يقفز
drought	جفاف	mud bricks	طوب لين	upside down	رأساً على عقب
planet	كوكب	insects	حشرات	flip	يتقلب
spread	ينتشر	deep	عميق	clap	يصفق
news	أخبار	whisper	يهمس	kindness	عطف

Pronunciation

Long /e/	Short /o/	Long /o/
read	يقرأ flood	فيضان goat
hear	يسمع blood	دم boat
		قارب

Language (The Past Simple Tense)

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

e.g. I **played** tennis **yesterday**.

e.g. I **went** to the club **last week**.

Negative

Subject (فاعل) + **did not (didn't)** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. I **didn't play** tennis **yesterday**.

e.g. I **didn't go** to the club **last week**.

Question:

Did + **subject** (فاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + **.....?**

e.g. **Did** you **sail** across the lake?

Q.W + **did** + **subject** (فاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + **.....?**

e.g. **Where did** you **go** **yesterday**?



Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

When Nature Strikes

There is a terrible flood that covers streets, gets the cars stuck and damages homes. Floods destroy crops. The hot weather causes droughts when there's no rain. Wildfires spread quickly in dry areas with strong winds, burning trees. Animals lose their homes.

The weather in Ancient Egypt

Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible, even in the desert. The Nile River gave water and rich soil, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the weather also brought problems like floods, droughts, and sandstorms.

The two frogs

There were two frogs who lived in a small pond near the edge of the village. They had fun catching flies and swimming in the cool water. One summer, the pond started to dry up. They looked for a new home. They found a deep well. One of the frogs thought that the well might dry up. So they decided not to live in the well. They began to look for a safe home.

A fiction story

Lily saw clouds upside down and worried for her flowers. She remembered her grandma's advice. She whispered to the clouds to turn right side up. The clouds flipped, the sun shone, flowers smiled, and Lily learned that kindness solves problems.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

عاصفة رعدية	ترااب
عاصفة رملية	يدمر
فيضان	موجة حارة
جفاف	يحرق
حرائق الغابات	كوكب

Lesson (2)

طقس	رياح
تربة غنية (خصبة)	الطوب اللبن
أحواض	يحل
رمل	جاف
ري	ذكي

Lesson (3)

بركة ماء	ضفدع
بئر	حر شديد
ذباب	بأمان
يقفز	يقرر
عميق	عالق
أجزاء	يبحث عن

Lessons (4 & 5)

شروق الشمس	عطف
رأساً على عقب	مريح
يهمس	سحب ناعمة
ينقلب	يطفو
يصفق	قصة خيالية

Activities On Unit 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Droughts happened when there wasn't enough
a) clouds b) rain c) wind d) sand
2. The Nile's water became
a) low b) high c) cold d) hot
3. The land became
a) wet b) sunny c) rainy d) dry
4. Crops couldn't
a) plant b) find c) grow d) cut

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A is when there's too much water covering land.
a) sandstorm b) drought c) thunderstorm d) flood
2. The homes protected the Ancient Egyptians from sandstorms.
a) mud bricks b) wood c) pyramids d) metal
3. To save our, we must keep it clean.
a) news b) planet c) wildfire d) bricks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

was - had - were - went

Last November, I had a lot of things to do. On Tuesday, November 2nd, I 1) dinner at Grandpa's house. The food 2) delicious. On Saturday, November 6th, I 3) to a nice concert.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in a pond any longer. So, they decided to look for a new home. After a long time, they saw a deep well. One of the frogs said, "This well looks like a great place for us to live!" But the other frog thought it wasn't safe. So, they searched for a better home.

Activities On Unit (3)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The frogs couldn't live in the
a) pool b) cave c) hole d) pond
2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
a) weather b) pond c) frogs d) summer

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why did the frogs search for a better home?
4. What did they see?
5. What did the frogs decide to do?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. any longer - couldn't - The frogs - stay - in the - pond - .
.....
2. in the flood - house - My uncle's - was - damaged - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He (eats) an orange yesterday.
2. (Be) there sandstorms in the past?

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i stay in the shade and wear a hat
2. why didn't you go to school yesterday

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

The weather in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(flood - damaged - drought)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

planet - drought - flood - damaged

- Mazen : Did you hear about the 1)..... last week?
 Dina : Yes, the water covered the streets and many houses were 2).....
 Mazen : My uncle's house was damaged and he stayed with us.
 Dina : I heard there is a 3)..... in China.
 Mazen : Yes, it's so dry that wildfires happen.
 Dina : What a pity! We should learn how to help our 4).....

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

did - soil - dry - weather

- Seif : Did Ancient Egypt have 1)..... that helped farming?
 Anas : Yes, it did. The Nile gave water and rich 2)....., too.
 Seif : What problems 3)..... the weather bring?
 Anas : It brought floods and droughts.
 Seif : What happened in droughts?
 Anas : The land became 4)..... and crops didn't grow.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- A lot of trees burned down in a
 a) wildfire b) drought c) flood d) food
- brought strong, hot winds with sand.
 a) Drought b) Soil c) Sandstorms d) Flood
- "....." means to jump high and far in one big movement.
 a) Leap b) Show c) Protect d) Heat wave
- Drought the Nile's water low in Ancient Egypt:
 a) make b) made c) makes d) will make
- The Ancient Egyptians didn't modern tools to help them.
 a) have b) has c) had d) having

Activities On Review 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- are called khamasin.
a) Floods b) Droughts c) Sandstorms d) Winds
- It was hard to see and in sandstorms.
a) breathe b) eat c) drink d) run
- People stayed inside to stay
a) happy b) strong c) weak d) safe
- They built their with thick mud bricks.
a) clubs b) homes c) schools d) hospitals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The systems brought water to crops in Ancient Egypt.
a) mud brick b) sandstorm c) irrigation d) wind
- Exercising and sleeping enough are good for our
a) snack b) medicine c) mental health d) knowledge
- Some animals, like crocodiles, to get food.
a) play b) keep c) sail d) hunt

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

role - owls - rocks - dogs

Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under

1)..... to stay cool during the day. Others, like 2)....., come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important 3)..... in the desert.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Extreme weather is different and much stronger than normal weather. It includes strong storms, harsh heat waves, strong sandstorms, severe floods, long droughts, and so much more. These types of weather can cause damage to homes and crops.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Extreme weather can homes and crops.
a) help b) damage c) live d) stay
2. The underlined word "**droughts**" means a long time without
a) food b) home c) rain d) air

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is extreme weather?
4. List two types of extreme weather mentioned in the text.
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. crocodiles - Huge - are - scary - very - .
.....
2. the two - go - did - Where - frogs - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Lizards (sometimes are) dangerous.
2. They don't have (some) oranges at home.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. He doesn't watch TV at night
2. did you go to the club yesterday

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

The Nile

Guiding elements:

(longest - fish - animals)

Unit 4

My Community

مجتمعي



Learning Outcomes

Identify different places in the community

تعرف على أماكن مختلفة في المجتمع

Speaking Ask and answer questions about favorite places

اطرح أسئلة وأجب عنها حول الأماكن المفضلة

Identify trigraph sounds in spoken words

تعرف على أصوات الحروف الثلاثية في الكلمات المنطوقة

Demonstrate understanding of texts about village life and new city developments

اظهر الفهم للنصوص المتعلقة بحياة القرية والتطورات الجديدة في المدينة

Demonstrate understanding of word problems

اظهر الفهم للمسائل الكلامية

Identify specific places by listening to descriptive passages

تعرف على أماكن محددة من خلال الاستماع إلى قطع وصفية

Identify vocabulary related to places in the community

تعرف على المفردات المتعلقة بالأماكن في المجتمع

Write a first person narrative describing a place or experience using clear structure, personal voice,

and descriptive language

اكتب سرد بضمير المتكلم يصف مكاناً أو تجربة، باستخدام هيكل واضح، وصوت شخصي، ولغة وصفية

Use prepositions of time in context

استخدم حروف الجر المتعلقة بالزمن في السياق

Lesson (1) Places in Our Community

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



restaurant

مطعم



coffee shop

مقهى



bakery

مخبز



supermarket

سوبر ماركت



club

نادي



theme park

ملاهي

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

community	مجتمع	relaxing	مريح	together	معًا / سويًا
neighborhood	حي / منطقة سكنية	bread	خبز	cool	رائع / لطيف
smell	رائحة	loaf	رغيف خبز	waiter	نادل / جرسون
personally	شخصيًا	grocery	بقالة	healthy	صحي
different	مختلف	hungry	جائع	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
train	يتدرب	bring	يحضّر
pass	يمر / يجتاز	buy	يشترى
	trained		brought
	passed		bought

Important expressions and prepositions

مبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go on rides	يركب الألعاب	sounds nice	يبدو لطيفًا
fresh bread	خبز طازج	connect with	يتواصل مع
have fun	يستمتع	hang out with	يقضي وقتًا مع
pick out	يختار	Let's + inf.	هيا بنا

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Let's Go Out! هيا نخرج!

Tamer and Adel talk about places in their neighborhood.

يتحدث تامر وعادل عن الأماكن في منطقتهم السكنية.



Tamer Where do you like to go in your neighborhood?

أين تحب أن تذهب في منطقتك السكنية؟

Adel I like going to the club to play sports, video games, and hang out with my friends. What about you?

أحب الذهاب إلى النادي لأمارس الرياضة، وألعب ألعاب الفيديو، وأقضي الوقت مع أصدقائي. وماذا عنك؟

Tamer I usually go to the supermarket with my family. We have fun picking out groceries together.

عادة أذهب مع أسرتي إلى السوبرماركت. نستمتع باختيار البقالة معاً.

Adel That sounds nice! Where do you go when you're hungry?

يبدو ذلك رائعاً! أين تذهب عندما تشعر بالجوع؟

Tamer We often go to restaurants for dinner. My family likes to try different places every weekend.

غالباً ما نذهب إلى المطاعم لتناول العشاء. عائلتي تحب تجربة أماكن مختلفة كل عطلة نهاية أسبوع.

Adel That's cool! Personally, I like going to the coffee shop for coffee and cake. It's so relaxing.

هذا جميل! أما أنا فأحب الذهاب إلى المقهى لتناول القهوة والكعك. إنه مكان مريح جداً.

Tamer Listen, I want to get some fresh bread from the bakery near the park. Do you want to come with me?

اسمع، أريد أن أشتري خبزاً طازجاً من المخبز القريب من الحديقة. هل تود أن تأتي معي؟

Adel Oh yes! I always buy a few loaves when I'm near there. Their bread is the best.

أوه نعم! أنا دائماً أشتري عدة أرغفة عندما أكون بالقرب من هناك. خبزهم هو الأفضل.

Tamer Let's go this afternoon.

هيا نذهب بعد ظهر اليوم.

Adel Great idea!

فكرة رائعة!

Read and learn.

1. At the **theme park**, you can go on rides.

في مدينة الملاهي، يمكنك الاستمتاع بالألعاب المختلفة.

2. If you want to buy groceries, go to the **supermarket**.

إذا أردت شراء سلع البقالة، فإذهب إلى السوبر ماركت.

3. The **club** is a fun place to play sports.

لنادي مكان ممتع لممارسة الرياضة.

4. I go to the **restaurant** to eat dinner.

أذهب إلى المطعم لتناول العشاء.

5. You can buy bread and cakes at the **bakery**.

يمكنك شراء الخبز والكيك من المخبز.

6. People relax and drink coffee at the **coffee shop**.

يسترخي الناس ويشربون القهوة في المقهى.

Discuss where you like to go.

ناقش المكان الذي تحب الذهاب إليه.



What is your favourite place to visit in your community?

ما هو مكانك المفضل الذي تحب زيارته في مجتمعك؟

I like going to the club.

أنا أحب الذهاب إلى النادي.



Why do you like going to the club?

لماذا تحب الذهاب إلى النادي؟

Because I can play sports there and have fun.

لأنني أستطيع ممارسة الرياضة هناك والاستمتاع بوقتي.



Activities On Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adel likes going to the to play sports and video games.
a) supermarket b) club c) bakery d) park
2. Tamer usually goes to the with his family to pick out groceries.
a) club b) restaurant c) supermarket d) coffee shop
3. Adel enjoys having coffee and at the coffee shop.
a) cake b) bread c) juice d) pizza
4. Tamer and his family often go to for dinner.
a) restaurants b) bakery c) park d) club

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. At the, you can go on rides.
a) restaurant b) theme park c) supermarket d) bakery
2. If you want to buy groceries, go to the
a) coffee shop b) supermarket c) theme park d) bakery
3. The is a fun place to play sports.
a) bakery b) restaurant c) supermarket d) club
4. I go to the to eat dinner.
a) restaurant b) theme park c) hospital d) bakery
5. You can buy bread and cakes at the
a) club b) theme park c) coffee shop d) bakery
6. People relax and drink coffee at the
a) coffee shop b) bakery c) supermarket d) hospital
7. We all live in the same
a) bread b) water c) community d) sport
8. Ahmed likes to play after school.
a) sports b) English c) homework d) subjects

9. On weekends, we with our friends in the park.
 a) hang out b) hang in c) hang back d) hang on
10. The story is really ! I love reading it.
 a) boring b) bad c) cool d) terrible
11. I go to the for coffee and cake.
 a) coffee shop b) theme park c) club d) bakery
12. The waiter brought us a healthy meal at the
 a) restaurant b) supermarket c) theme park d) club
13. I love the smell of fresh bread when I pass by the
 a) bakery b) club c) coffee shop d) restaurant
14. I train at the every weekend.
 a) restaurant b) supermarket c) theme park d) club
15. My mom shops at the
 a) theme park b) restaurant c) supermarket d) bakery

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

supermarket - club - bread - fresh

Tamer and Adel talk about their favorite places. Adel enjoys going to the 1)..... to play sports, play video games, and meet friends. Tamer likes going to the 2)..... with his family and eating at restaurants. Adel loves coffee shops for coffee and cake. They decide to visit the bakery together in the afternoon to buy fresh 3).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tamer and Adel talked about places in their neighborhood. Adel likes going to the club to play sports, video games, and hang out with friends. Tamer usually goes to the supermarket with his family to buy groceries. When they are hungry, Tamer's family goes to restaurants for dinner. Adel enjoys visiting the coffee shop to have coffee and cake because it is relaxing. Later, Tamer invited Adel to go to the bakery near the park. They planned to go there in the afternoon.

Lesson (1)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adel likes to play sports at the
a) park b) club c) zoo d) supermarket
2. The underlined word "there" refers to
a) school b) bakery c) shop d) park

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the text about?

4. When does Tamer's family go to restaurants?

5. Where does Tamer go with his family to buy groceries?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. do - go - Where - you - to - like - ?

2. That - nice - sounds - very - .

3. get - fresh - some - want - I - to - bread - .

6 Punctuate the following.

1. i like going to the club

2. where do you buy bread

7 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Places in your neighborhood

Guiding elements:

(club - supermarket - bakery)

Lesson (2)

Egyptian Villages

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



fields
حقول



main square
الساحة الرئيسية



barn
حظيرة



community centre
المركز المجتمعي



cottage
بيت ريفي / كوخ

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

village	قرية	party	حفلة
quiet / calm	هادئ	part	جزء
hill	تل	cow	بقرة
friendly	ودود	sheep	خروف
cozy	مريح	peaceful	مسالم / هادئ
busy	مزدحم	simple	بسيط
market	سوق	stars	النجوم

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير و حروف جر هامة

full of	ملئ بـ	do activities	يقوم بأنشطة
in a cozy village	في قرية مريحة	spend time	يقضي وقتاً
at night	في الليل	keep animals	يربي الحيوانات
surrounded by	مُحاط بـ	have fun	يستمتع

Lesson (2)

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	shop يتسوق	shopped
work يعمل	worked	enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hear يسمع	heard	feed يُطعم / يغذى	fed
sing يغني	sang	buy يشتري	bought
meet يقابل	met	sell يبيع	sold
keep يربي	kept	spend يقضي	spent

Antonyms

متضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	المضاد
small	صغير (الحجم)	big	كبير (الحجم)
tall	طويل	short	قصير
quiet	هادئ	noisy	مزعج / صاخب

Discuss your favourite places in the village. ناقش الأماكن المفضلة لك في القرية.

What place do you like most in the village?

ما المكان الذي تحبه أكثر في القرية؟

Why do you like the barn?

لماذا تُحب الحظيرة؟

I like the barn.

أنا أحب الحظيرة.

Because I enjoy spending time with the animals.

لأنني أستمتع بقضاء الوقت مع الحيوانات.

Read the text.

الحياة في قريتي Life in My Village

I live in a small **village** with green **fields**, tall trees, and quiet hills. The people are friendly, and the village is full of life.

أعيش في قرية صغيرة بها حقول خضراء، أشجار عالية وتلال هادئة. أهلها طيبون وودودون، والقرية تنبض بالحياة.

My family and I live in a cozy **cottage** near the **community center**. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields. The air is fresh, and everything feels calm.

أسكن مع عائلتي في بيت مريح يقع بالقرب من مركز القرية. كل صباح أسمع تغريد العصافير وأشاهد الفلاحين يعملون بالحقول. الهواء منعش وكل شيء هادئ.

The **main square** is the busiest place. On Saturdays, people meet there to shop at the market.

الساحة الرئيسية هي أكثر الأماكن ازدحاماً في القرية. ففي أيام السبت، يجتمع الناس هناك للتسوق من السوق.

Farmers keep animals like cows, sheep, and chickens in the **barns**. I visit my uncle's barn to help feed the animals. The community center is a fun place. I meet my friends and play games there every Thursday.

يربي الفلاحون في حظائرهم حيوانات مثل الأبقار والأغنام والدجاج. وغالباً ما أزور حظيرة عمي لأساعده في إطعام الحيوانات. مركز القرية مكان ممتع. التقى بأصدقائي هناك ولعب الألعاب كل يوم خميس.

At night, the village is quiet. I walk near the fields and look at the stars.

I love my village. It is a happy place to live.

وفي الليل، تكون القرية هادئة. أسير بجانب الحقول وأنظر إلى النجوم. أنا أحب قريتي، فهي مكان جميل للعيش فيه.



Listen again and answer.

استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

1. What is the busiest part of the village?

2. What is the village like at night?

3. Name two animals that you can find in village barns.

Lesson (2)

Language In Use

Prepositions of time

حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

at

We use (**at**) with

نستخدم «at» مع ...

■ **clock times**

أوقات الساعة

e.g. I get up **at 6 a.m.**, every day.

■ **meal times**

أوقات الوجبات

e.g. The coffee shop is very busy **at lunchtime**.

■ **time phrases**

عبارات الوقت

e.g. **At night**, the village is calm and quiet.

in

We use (**in**) with ...

نستخدم «in» مع ...

■ **parts of the day**

أجزاء اليوم

e.g. I liked visiting my uncle **in the afternoons**.

■ **seasons**

فصول السنة

e.g. The weather is hot **in summer**.

■ **years**

السنوات

e.g. I moved to Alexandria **in 2020**.

■ **months**

الشهور

e.g. **In December**, the weather is cold.

on

We use (**on**) with ...

نستخدم «on» مع ...

■ **days**

الأيام

e.g. **On Saturdays**, everyone gathers in the community center.

■ **dates**

التواريخ

e.g. My birthday is **on June 8th**.



Practice on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I was born March.
a) in b) on c) at d) with
2. Let's meet 3 p.m.
a) in b) on c) at d) with
3. The party is Friday.
a) with b) at c) on d) in
4. I like to relax the evening.
a) in b) on c) at d) with
5. Fridays, I have breakfast with my family.
a) To b) At c) On d) In
6. She has breakfast early the morning.
a) in b) on c) at d) with
7. I meet my friends at the club lunchtime.
a) at b) in c) with d) on
8. We usually play football 5 p.m.
a) with b) at c) on d) in

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I see my cousin (on) summer.
2. I go to the beach (at) July.
3. We celebrate Mom's birthday (in) August 14th.
4. We watch fireworks (on) midnight.
5. I always study English (at) Mondays.
6. My parents were married (on) 1995.
7. I have a meeting (in) 4 p.m.
8. We travel to Italy (on) winter.
9. I have piano lessons (in) Saturday.
10. We went to Italy (at) 2019.

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali lives in a peaceful with green fields.
a) city b) village c) farm d) market
2. In the morning, Ali hears singing.
a) birds b) singers c) cars d) drums
3. On, people shop at the market.
a) Fridays b) Sundays c) Saturdays d) Mondays
4. At night, he enjoys walking near the
a) schools b) clubs c) hospitals d) fields

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The park is very in the morning, there is no noise.
a) busy b) quiet c) friendly d) crowded
2. The house on the has a great view.
a) hill b) cow c) market d) sheep
3. Our neighbors are very and always help us.
a) busy b) cozy c) friendly d) unkind
4. This room is small but very and tidy.
a) cozy b) hard c) party d) hill
5. We went to the to buy fruits and vegetables.
a) market b) village c) club d) barn
6. Farmers their animals every day.
a) celebrate b) feed c) surround d) drink
7. The garden is by tall trees.
a) simple b) celebrate c) surrounded d) busy
8. We will have a big to celebrate her birthday.
a) party b) sheep c) cow d) hill
9. The basket is full fruits.
a) of b) in c) on d) at

10. The opposite of the word "small" is
 a) quiet b) noisy c) big d) short
11. Farmers grow crops in the
 a) barn b) fields c) cottage d) house
12. The cows and sheep sleep in the
 a) barn b) villa c) air d) square

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

square - meeting - animals - cottages

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy 1)..... surrounded by green fields and fresh air. There is a market in the main 2)..... where people buy and sell fresh fruit and vegetables. Farmers keep their 3)..... in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My village is small but beautiful. It has green fields, quiet hills, and friendly people. I live in a cozy cottage near the community center. Farmers keep cows, sheep, and chickens in their barns. Every Thursday, I meet my friends at the community center to play games. The main square is very busy on Saturdays when everyone shops at the market. At night, the village is peaceful, and I like walking near the fields to see the stars. I love my village because it is calm and happy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Farmers keep their animals in
 a) boxes b) barns c) pots d) bottles
2. The underlined word "busy" means
 a) quiet b) crowded c) tall d) small

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why does the writer love his village?
4. Why is the main square busy on Saturdays?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

Lesson (2)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I was born (at) December.
2. We have lunch (on) 2 p.m.
3. The meeting is (at) Monday morning.
4. We usually go to Matrouh (on) summer.
5. My father goes to the park (at) the evening.
6. We always visit our grandparents (in) Saturdays.
7. My birthday is (on) April.
8. He goes to bed (in) midnight.
9. She was born (at) 2008.
10. The shop opens (on) the morning.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. the village - is - What - at night - like - ?
.....
2. enjoy - time - I - spending - with - animals - the - .
.....
3. born - I - in - was - March - .
.....

7 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Life in the village

Guiding elements:

(fields - cottage - animals)

Lesson (3)

Multiply It with Words!



Vocabulary

المفردات

multiply

يضرب

How many

كم عدد

math problem

مسألة حسابية

the ones

الأحاد

solution

الحل

the tens

العشرات

on the top

في الأعلى

single-digit

رقم واحد

at the bottom

في الأسفل

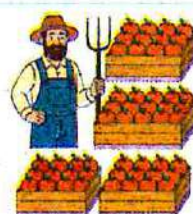
double-digit

رقم مزدوج

Think and solve.

فكر وحل.

A farmer has 4 boxes of apples. If each box has 32 apples, then how many apples does the farmer have in total?



First, we need to understand the question.

- How many apples?

- How many boxes?

Then, we put the double-digit on the top, and the single-digit on the bottom.

Finally, we multiply!

	Tens	Ones
	3	2
X		4
	1	2
		8

Step 1: Multiply the ones with 4.

So, 2 ones x 4 ones = 8 ones

Step 2: Multiply the tens with 4.

So, 3 tens x 4 ones = 12 tens

Problem: $32 \times 4 = ?$

Solution: = 128

Answer: = 128 apples



It's easy! Now, you try. Solve the following math problem.

A farmer has 3 baskets. Each basket holds 22 oranges.

How many oranges does the farmer have in total?

	Tens	Ones
		2
X		3
	6	

Problem: X =

Solution: =

Answer: =

Lesson (3)



Pronunciation

A trigraph

A **trigraph** is a group of **three** letters that represents a **single** sound.

تركيب ثلاثي الأحرف هو مجموعة من ثلاثة أحرف تمثل صوتاً واحداً.

The trigraph "**dge**" sounds like "**j**".

Example: "bridge" is pronounced "brij"

The trigraph "**tch**" sounds like "**ch**".

Example: "match" is pronounced "mach"

The trigraph "**igh**" sounds like "**i**".

Example: "right" is pronounced "rite"

Look, listen and say.

انظر، واستمع وقل.

igh - dge - tch



bridge

كوبري



match

مباراة



right

صحيح



flight

رحلة طيران



fridge

ثلاجة



watch

ساعة يد

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Look, read and fill in the missing trigraph.



bri _ _ _



ma _ _ _



r _ _ t



fl _ _ t



fri _ _ _



wa _ _ _

2 Read and circle the odd sound out.

- | | | | | | | | |
|----|--------|---|--------|---|--------|---|-------|
| 1. | match | - | near | - | watch | - | catch |
| 2. | flight | - | right | - | pure | - | night |
| 3. | near | - | watch | - | witch | - | catch |
| 4. | fair | - | bright | - | flight | - | night |

3 Read and sort the words.

match - bridge - right - flight - fridge - watch

tch

igh

dge

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing: The New Administrative Capital Think and Create

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية	crowding	ازدحام
government	حكومة	Iconic Tower	البرج الأيقوني
steel	فولاذ / صلب	smart	ذكي

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

building	مبنى	energy	طاقة	glass	زجاج
city	مدينة	floor	طابق	narrative	سردى / روائى
office	مكتب	peaceful	هادئ	area	منطقة
airport	مطار	comfortable	مريح	east	شرق
design	تصميم				

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
help	يساعد helped
reduce	يقلل reduced
design	يصمم designed
manage	يدير managed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
think	يفكر / يعتقد thought
build	يبني built
see	يرى saw
write	يكتب wrote

Antonyms

متضادات

Word	Antonym
new	جديد old قديم
high	مرتفع / عالى low منخفض
modern	حديث ancient قديم
strong	قوى weak ضعيف
peaceful	هادئ crowded / busy مزدحم

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

made of	مصنوع من	the whole city	المدينة بأكملها
look for	يبحث عن	peaceful life	حياة هادئة
is located in	تقع في	reduce crowding	يقلل الازدحام
government offices	مكاتب حكومية	modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	The New Administrative Capital	
keep us safe	يحافظ على سلامتنا		العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

Egypt's New City المدينة الجديدة في مصر

Egypt builds new cities almost everywhere. My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital, 45 km east of Cairo. It's a new city that helps reduce crowding in Cairo. The city is designed to be very smart. Modern technology is used to manage roads, water, energy and almost everything.



مصر تبني مديناً جديدة في كل مكان تقريباً. أعيش أنا وعائلتي في العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة، التي تقع على بُعد 45 كيلومتراً شرق القاهرة. إنها مدينة حديثة تهدف إلى تخفيف الازدحام في القاهرة. تم تصميم المدينة لتكون ذكية للغاية، حيث تُستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة لإدارة الطرق والمياه والطاقة وكل شيء تقريباً.

The city has green areas everywhere. It has also government offices and important buildings. The city where I live has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower, and a new airport!

تنتشر المساحات الخضراء في كل أرجاء المدينة. كما تضم مكاتب حكومية ومبانٍ مهمة. وفي المدينة التي أعيش فيها، يوجد أطول برج في أفريقيا، وهو البرج الأيقوني، بالإضافة إلى مطار جديد!

The Iconic Tower is 385 meters high and has 80 floors. It is made of strong glass and steel. From the top, I can see the whole city! People here can find great jobs and have a peaceful life. It is my favorite city in Egypt.

يبلغ ارتفاع البرج الأيقوني 385 متراً ويتكون من 80 طابقاً، وهو مصنوع من زجاج قوي وفولاذ. ومن قمته أستطيع رؤية المدينة بأكملها! الناس هنا يمكنهم العثور على وظائف رائعة وعيش حياة هادئة. إنها مدينتي المفضلة في مصر.

Lessons (4 & 5)



Writing skills

Writing Narrative Text in the First Person

كتابة النص السردى بصيغة المتكلم

1) First Person:

ضمير المتكلم:

Use "I", "me", "my"

استخدم ضمائر مثل: I, me, my

2) Setting:

المكان:

Where is your story happening?

أين تدور أحداث قصتك؟

3) Goal:

الهدف:

What do you want to do?

ماذا تريد أن تفعل؟

4) Description:

الوصف:

Use the 5 senses and other adjectives.

استخدم الحواس الخمس والصفات الأخرى.

5) Ending:

النهاية:

How does the story finish?

كيف تنتهي القصة؟

The word "narrative" comes from "narration" or "telling a story". But, don't forget that a good story is one that readers can see in their minds (imagine). Good writers use a lot of description to do this.

كلمة «narrative» مشتقة من كلمة «narration» أو «telling a story» (سرد قصة). لكن لا تنس أن القصة الجيدة هي تلك التي يستطيع القراء تخيلها ورؤيتها في أذهانهم. الكتاب الجيدون يستخدمون الكثير من الوصف لتحقيق ذلك.



Model

Title: My village

Introduction: Write and describe your village.

اكتب وصف قريتك.

I live in a small village. It is quiet and beautiful. There are many green fields, trees, and animals. The air is fresh, and people know each other.

Paragraph 1: Write about why it's so great.

اكتب عن سبب روعتها.

My village is great because it is very peaceful. The streets are clean, and there is no traffic. People are kind and helpful.

Paragraph 2: Add another detail and description.

أضف تفصيلاً آخر ووصفاً.

There is a river near my village. Children like to play by the water. Farmers grow fruits and vegetables in the fields.

Conclusion:

اكتب لم هي مكانك المفضل في مصر؟ Write about why it's your favorite place in Egypt.

I love my village because it is calm and full of nature. It is my favorite place in Egypt.

Think and Create A Research

Learn!

Why Do We Research Anything?

لماذا نقوم بالبحث عن أي شيء؟

That's easy! We research to learn something new—something we didn't know before. هذا بسيط! نحن نبحث لتتعلم شيئاً جديداً، شيئاً لم نكن نعرفه من قبل.

Steps!

Look at the model, below. انظر إلى النموذج أدناه.

Here are four easy steps to get you started.

Example

1. Pick a topic.
2. Ask a question (?)
3. Look for information.
4. Organize what you find.

1. The Pyramids.
2. When were they built?
3. Built between 2600 and 2500 BC, in Giza. Khofu, Khafre, Menkaure.
4. List the information in complete sentences.

My Research

Topic:

الموضوع The Platypus

حيوان خلد الماء

Ask a question

اطرح سؤالاً Where does the platypus live?

أين يعيش حيوان خلد الماء؟

Look for information

- In eastern Australia. شرق أستراليا.

ابحث عن المعلومات - It has a beak like a duck.

منقار يشبه منقار البط.

- It lays eggs even though it is a mammal.

يضع البيض على الرغم من كونه من الثدييات.

Organize what you find: (What new thing did you learn?)

نظم ما تجده: (ما الشيء الجديد الذي تعلمته؟)

The platypus lives in eastern Australia. It is a mammal that lays eggs. It has a beak like a duck and webbed feet. I learned that it is one of the few mammals that lay eggs.

يعيش حيوان خلد الماء في شرق أستراليا. وهو ثديي يضع البيض. وله منقار يشبه منقار البط وأقدام مكففة. لقد تعلمت أنه واحد من الثدييات القليلة

التي تضع البيض.



Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The New Administrative Capital is Cairo.
a) west of b) north of c) east of d) south of
- The city has areas everywhere.
a) green b) brown c) yellow d) red
- People can find great there.
a) jobs b) games c) toys d) schools
- The city also has a new
a) hospital b) airport c) shop d) park

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The Eiffel Tower is an building in Paris.
a) modern b) iconic c) ugly d) crowded
- The new city helps crowding in Cairo.
a) reduce b) grow c) increase d) locate
- is a very strong material.
a) Paper b) Glass c) Steel d) Wool
- Cairo is the of Egypt.
a) area b) airport c) capital d) topic
- The plane will land at the in 10 minutes.
a) airport b) tower c) sea d) port
- The city is very It uses technology everywhere.
a) stupid b) old c) smart d) ancient
- Builders often use strong to build towers.
a) water b) steel c) paper d) cloth
- We try to crowding to keep us safe, healthy and comfortable.
a) get b) increase c) grow d) reduce
- The sofa is very soft and
a) noisy b) hard c) comfortable d) ugly

10. I read an interesting text about smart homes.
 a) narrative b) airport c) glass d) area
11. The students need to their ideas before writing.
 a) locate b) organize c) damage d) crowd
12. Scientists do to find new cures.
 a) city b) house c) research d) wood

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

steel - paper - high - famous

The Iconic Tower is the tallest building in Africa. It is 385 meters
 1) and has 80 floors. It is made of strong glass and 2) From
 the top, people can see the whole city. The tower is very 3) and
 many visitors come to see it every year.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt builds new cities to reduce crowding in Cairo. The New
 Administrative Capital is one of them. It uses modern technology to manage
 roads, water, and energy. The city has green areas, government offices, and
 important buildings. It also has the Iconic Tower and a new airport. People
 can work, study, and live there happily. From the tower, you can see the
 whole city. It is peaceful and safe, so many families love living in it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The New Capital uses modern to manage roads.
 a) technology b) families c) students d) towers
2. The opposite of the underlined word "new" is
 a) fit b) old c) big d) small

Lessons (4 & 5)

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

4. What does modern technology manage in the city?

5. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. east - is - Cairo - of - Our - city - .

2. Egypt - cities - new - builds - many - .

3. do - want - you - What - to - do - ?

4. were - Pyramids - When - built - the - ?

5. meters - The - high - 385 - Iconic Tower - is - .

6 Punctuate the following.

1. the Iconic tower is very tall.

2. egypt builds new cities

7 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

The New Administrative Capital

Guiding elements:

(east Cairo - reduce - smart)



Review on Unit (4)

Vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	quiet	هادئ
coffee shop	مقهى	reduce	يقلل
bakery	مخبز	crowding	ازدحام
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	energy	طاقة
theme park	ملاهي	Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية
village	قرية	smart	ذكي
fields	حقول	government	حكومة
main square	الساحة الرئيسية	steel	فولاذ / صلب
barn	حظيرة	design	يصمم / تصميم
community centre	مركز مجتمعي	peaceful	هادئ
cottage	بيت ريفي	technology	تكنولوجيا

Pronunciation

/dge/	/tch/	/igh/
bridge	match	bright
fridge	watch	flight

Language (Prepositions of time)

at	نستخدم «at» مع أوقات الساعة - أوقات الوجبات - عبارات الوقت		
at 6 a.m	في السادسة صباحاً	at lunchtime	في وقت الغداء
		at night	ليلاً
in	نستخدم «in» مع (أجزاء اليوم - فصول السنة - السنوات - الشهور)		
in summer	في الصيف	in the afternoon	في فترة بعد الظهر
in 2020	في عام ٢٠٢٠	in December	في شهر ديسمبر
on	نستخدم «on» مع (الأيام - التواريخ)		
on Saturday	في يوم السبت	on June 8 th	في الثامن من يونيو



Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Life in my village

I live in a small village with green fields and tall trees. People are kind and friendly. Farmers work in the fields every day. Children play in the streets after school. The air is fresh and clean. I love my village because it is peaceful and beautiful.

The New Administrative Capital

The New Administrative Capital is a modern city in Egypt. It has tall buildings, wide streets, and beautiful parks. There are schools, hospitals, and shopping centers. Many people work there in offices. It is very clean and organized. I like visiting it because it looks new and smart.

The Pyramids

The Pyramids are in Giza, Egypt. They are very old and famous. Many tourists visit them every year. The Pyramids are big and beautiful. They show how smart the ancient Egyptians were. I like visiting the Pyramids and riding a camel there. It is always an exciting trip.

Places in your community

In my community, there are many useful places. There is a school where we learn, a park where we play, and a market to buy food. We also have a clinic for sick people. I like my community because it is safe, and has everything we need.

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

ملاهي	مجتمع
حي / منطقة سكنية	مطعم
رياضة	مقهى
بقالة	مخبز
مريح	سوبر ماركت
رائحة	نادي

Lesson (2)

هادئ	حقول
ودود	قرية
بسيط	الساحة الرئيسية
سوق	حظيرة
خروف	بيت ريفي
تل	مركز مجتمعي

Lesson (3)

ساعة يد	كوبري
ثلاجة	لامع / ساطع
يضرب (حسابيًا)	مباراة
رقم مزدوج	صحيح
الحل	رحلة طيران

Lessons (4 & 5)

البرج الأيقوني	عاصمة
صلب / فولاذ	مدينة
مطار	يقلل
طاقة	ازدحام
حديث	ذكي
تكنولوجيا	حكومة

Activities On Unit 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Life in a village is and simple.
a) peaceful b) noisy c) crowded d) loud
- In a village people live in
a) clubs b) cottages c) mountains d) caves
- There is a market in the main
a) park b) garden c) lake d) square
- Farmers keep their animals in
a) cities b) glass c) barns d) stars

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- You can buy bread and cake at the
a) bakery b) club c) coffee shop d) hospital
- Builders often use strong to build towers.
a) paper b) wood c) steel d) glass
- We can eat dinner at a
a) restaurant b) bakery c) supermarket d) hospital

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

centre - circle - friendly - cottage

I live in a small village with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. The people are 1) and the village is full of life. My parents live in a cozy 2) near the community 3) Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt builds new cities almost everywhere. My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital, 45 km east of Cairo. It's a new city that helps reduce crowding in Cairo. The city is designed to be very smart. Modern technology is used to manage roads, water, energy and almost everything. The city has green areas everywhere. It has also government offices and important buildings. The city where I live has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower, and a new airport!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The New Administrative Capital is of Cairo.
a) west b) east c) north d) south
2. The city is designed to be very
a) old b) dirty c) smart d) dusty

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the opposite of the underlined word "Modern"?
4. How does the new city help Egypt?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Life - peaceful - village - a - in - is - .
.....

2. place - your - is - What - favorite - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She was born (at) March.
2. We moved to Alexandria (in) April 28th.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. the party is on friday.
2. how tall is the iconic Tower?

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Describe your city

Guiding elements:

(nice - park - clean)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

barn - peaceful - village - square

- Ali : Which place do you like in the 1)..... ?
 Sara : I like the 2)..... because I love the animals.
 Ali : Do you enjoy walking next to the main 3).....
 Sara : Yes, I do. For me the village is 4).....
 Ali : I agree with you.

- Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

located - reduce - live - Capital

- Mona : Where do you 1)..... ?
 Dina : I live in the New Administrative 2).....
 Mona : Where is it 3)..... ?
 Dina : It is 45 km east of Cairo.
 Mona : How does it help Egypt?
 Dina : It helps 4)..... crowding in Cairo.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- I travel to Aswan February.
 a) at b) on c) in d) with
- My dad watches TV night.
 a) on b) at c) with d) in
- We can buy groceries at the
 a) bakery b) club c) supermarket d) hospital
- The word "peaceful" means
 a) quiet b) noisy c) dirty d) wide
- Farmers keep their animals in
 a) homes b) schools c) boxes d) barns

Unit 5

Our World, Our Resources

عالمنا و موارِدنا



Learning Outcomes

Ask and answer questions about natural resources in Egypt

اطرح أسئلة وأجب عنها حول الموارد الطبيعية في مصر

Speaking

Discuss the importance of natural resources

ناقش أهمية الموارد الطبيعية

Identify the stressed syllable in words with prefixes

تعرف على المقطع المشدّد في الكلمات ذات البادئات

Demonstrate understanding by answering comprehension questions on a text about natural resources

Reading

Identify and understand vocabulary related to natural resources

أجب عن أسئلة الفهم لإظهار فهمك لنص عن الموارد الطبيعية

تعرف على معاني المفردات المتعلقة بالموارد الطبيعية

Listen to a dialog and answer comprehension questions

استمع إلى حوار وأجب عن أسئلة الفهم

Listening

Identify vocabulary related to natural resources

تعرف على المفردات المتعلقة بالموارد الطبيعية

Complete sentences using comparative adjectives

أكمل الجمل باستخدام صفات المقارنة

Writing

Write a descriptive paragraph about natural resources and ways to conserve them

اكتب فقرة وصفية عن الموارد الطبيعية وطرق الحفاظ عليها

Lesson (1)

The Gifts of Nature

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

Natural Resources موارد طبيعية



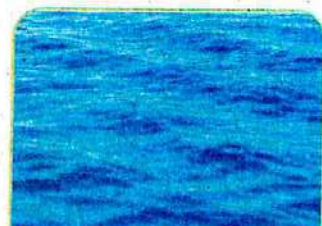
sunlight

ضوء الشمس



soil

تربة زراعية



water

ماء



minerals

معادن



wind

رياح



fossil fuel

وقود حفري

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

nature	الطبيعة	farming	الزراعة	region	منطقة
crystals	بلورات	wisely	بحكمة	gold	ذهب
copper	نحاس	country	دولة - بلد	cotton	قطن
metals	معادن	soft	ناعم	fabric	نسيج «قماش»
treasure	كنز	rich	غني	oil	بتترول
natural gas	غاز طبيعي	poor	فقير	iron	حديد
company	شركة	gift	هدية	wheat	قمح
jewelry	مجوهرات - حلي	machines	آلات - ماكينات	land	أرض

Definitions

تعريفات

natural resources	things from nature that help us live	مصادر طبيعية
fertile	a land with rich soil to grow food	خصب
minerals	crystals and metals, like gold and copper	معادن
electricity	the energy used to power homes and machines	كهرباء
cotton	a soft, white plant that is used to make fabric	قطن

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
talk	يتكلم talked	provide يزود - يمد	provided
power	يُشغل powered	contain يحتوي على	contained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
grow	يزرع grew	sleep ينام	slept
find	يجد found	draw يرسم	drew

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work for	يعمل لدى	many kinds of	أنواع كثيرة من
things found in nature	أشياء توجد في الطبيعة	be used to	يستخدم لـ
help our community grow	يساعد مجتمعنا على النمو	as well	أيضاً

Language Notes

be + used to + inf.

يستخدم لـ

e.g. Oil is used to make fuel.

be + used for + (verb + ing)

يستخدم لـ

e.g. Oil is used for making fuel.

help + object + inf. / to + inf.

يساعد ... أن

e.g. The fertile land helps us (to) grow food.

Lesson (1)

Treasures of Egypt كنوز مصر

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Mr. Hani and his students are discussing natural resources.

الأستاذ هاني وطلابه يناقشون الموارد الطبيعية

Mr. Hani Good morning, class! Today, we will talk about **natural resources**. Do you know what natural resources are?



صباح الخير يا طلاب! اليوم سوف نتحدث عن الموارد الطبيعية. هل تعرفون ما هي الموارد الطبيعية؟

Ali Yes! They are things **we find in nature**, like **water** and **trees**.

نعم! إنها الأشياء التي نجدها في الطبيعة، مثل الماء والأشجار.

Mr. Hani Very good! Natural resources help us in our daily lives. Can you name a natural resource we can find in Egypt?

أحسن! تساعدنا الموارد الطبيعية في حياتنا اليومية. هل تستطيعون ذكر مورد طبيعي موجود في مصر؟

Mona The **Nile River**! It provides water for drinking and farming.

نهر النيل! إنه يوفر الماء للشرب والزراعة.

Mr. Hani Excellent! The Nile is the most important water resource in Egypt. What other treasures does Egypt have?

ممتاز! النيل أهم مورد مائي في مصر. ما الموارد الأخرى التي تملكها مصر؟

Ali We have **oil** and **natural gas**. My uncle works for an oil company.

لدينا البترول والغاز الطبيعي! عمي يعمل في شركة بترول.

Mr. Hani That's right! Oil and natural gas are used to make fuel and **electricity**. What about farming?

هذا صحيح! يستخدم البترول والغاز الطبيعي لإنتاج الوقود والكهرباء. ماذا عن الزراعة؟

Mona We grow **cotton**, **wheat**, and many kinds of **fruit**.

نزرع القطن والقمح وأنواعاً كثيرة من الفاكهة.

Mr. Hani Well done! The **fertile** land along the Nile and in the Delta region helps us grow food.

أحسن! الأرض الخصبة على طول النيل وفي الدلتا تساعدنا في زراعة الغذاء.

Ali I read that Egypt has minerals, too, like **gold**!

لقد قرأت أن مصر تملك معادن أيضاً، مثل الذهب!

Mr. Hani That's right! Egypt's deserts contain gold, **iron**, and other minerals, as well.

هذا صحيح! صخاري مصر تحتوي على الذهب والحديد ومعادن أخرى أيضاً.

Mona They're used to make jewelry, make buildings, and help our country grow.

تستخدم هذه المعادن لصنع المجوهرات وبناء المباني، وتساعد بلدنا على النمو.

Mr. Hani Well done, class.

أحسنتم يا طلاب!

1 Listen again and answer.

استمع مرة أخرى وأجب.

1. What are natural resources?

.....

2. Where can we find gold in Egypt?

.....

3. What do we grow in Egypt?

.....

2 Read the text again. Who said these sentences?

Mr. Hani - Ali - Mona

1. Minerals are used to make jewelry and make new buildings.

(.....)

2. The Nile is the most important water resource in Egypt.

(.....)

3. Natural resources are things found in nature.

(.....)

Activities On Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt's contain gold.
a) lakes b) deserts c) zoos d) buildings
2. We use to make jewelry.
a) gold b) plastic c) wood d) sand
3. Egypt's deserts contain other
a) coins b) books c) buses d) minerals
4. Minerals are used to help our grow.
a) street b) village c) country d) city

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile River is the most important resource in Egypt.
a) wind b) water c) sand d) oil
2. Egypt's land along the Nile is, so we can grow food.
a) fertile b) poor c) dry d) wise
3. Natural resources like plants help our country
a) sleep b) play c) write d) grow
4. Egypt's deserts contain many, such as gold and iron.
a) crops b) companies c) minerals d) secrets
5. like gold and diamond are used to make jewelry.
a) Dams b) Cars c) Houses d) Minerals
6. Natural resources are things found in
a) sky b) nature c) star d) Park
7. The Nile provides water for drinking and
a) playing b) building c) farming d) providing
8. means land with rich soil to grow food.
a) Fertile b) Electricity c) Cotton d) Minerals

9. are things from nature that help us live.
 a) Fertile b) Minerals c) Natural Resources d) Cotton
10. Which resources can you see in Egypt?
 a) world b) nature c) local d) natural
11. is a soft, white plant used to make fabric.
 a) Fertile b) Mineral c) Electricity d) Cotton
12. Crystals and metals like gold and copper are
 a) food b) minerals c) subjects d) tools

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

farming - nature - drinking - lives

Mr. Hani will talk about natural resources. They are things we find in

- 1), like water and trees. They help us in our daily 2)
 The Nile River provides water for drinking and 3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is rich in natural resources. These resources include oil and natural gas in its deserts. The Nile River is an important resource for water and farming. These resources provide jobs for many people. Oil and gas are used to make fuel and electricity. The fertile land along the Nile and in the Delta region helps us grow food.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about
 a) farming b) reading c) natural resources d) sport
2. The underlined word "rich" means not
 a) happy b) clever c) smart d) poor

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How does the fertile land help us?
4. Where are oil and natural gas found?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

Lesson (1)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. do - Egypt - What - in - grow - we - ?

2. talk - resources - We - about - natural - will - .

3. Egypt - find - Where - gold - can - in - we - ?

4. Natural - grow - our - resources - country - help - .

5. resources - What - natural - are - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

1. we have oil and natural gas

2. What resources does Egypt have

7 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Treasures of Egypt

Guiding elements:

(nature - Nile River - natural gas)

Lesson (2) Metals and Minerals in Our World

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

hidden treasures	كنوز مخفية	coins	عملات معدنية	rare	نادر
electrical wires	أسلاك كهربائية	strong	قوى	tools	أدوات
valuable	قيم / ذو قيمة	diamond	ماس	pipes	مواسير

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

wisely	بحكمة	miner	عامل مناجم	airplane	طائرة
precious	ثمين	underground	تحت الأرض	soft	ناعم
Eastern Desert	الصحراء الشرقية	special	خاص / مميز	chargers	شواحن
gold rings	خواتم ذهبية	unused lights	أضواء غير مستخدمة	shiny	ساطع / لامع

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
shape	يُشكّل / shaped	develop	يطور / ينمي / developed
love	يحب / loved	switch off	يُطفئ / يغلق / switched off
waste	يُضيع / يهدر / wasted	form	يتشكل / يتكون / formed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
break	يكسر / broke	dig	يحفر / dug
get	يحصل على / got	cost	يتكلف / cost

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

easy to shape	سهل التشكيل	dig deep into the ground	يحفّر عميقًا في الأرض
(be) found in	يوجد في	take millions of years to form	يستغرق ملايين السنين ليتكون
super strong	قوى للغاية	cost so much money	يتكلف أموالًا طائلة
work with	يعمل مع	non-renewable resources	موارد غير متجددة
made of	مصنوع من	under the earth	تحت الأرض
perfect for	مثالي لـ		

Lesson (2)

Language Notes

It's + صفة + to + inf.

e.g. It's easy to shape gold.

take + فترة زمنية + to + inf

e.g. They take millions of years to form.

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

Hidden Treasures الكنوز المخفية

Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make important things.

تحت سطح الأرض، نجد معادن ثمينة مثل الذهب والفضة والنحاس والحديد، ويتم استخدامها يومياً لصناعة أشياء مهمة.

Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to shape. People use it for coins and jewelry. I love gold rings!

الذهب معدن ناعم ولامع وسهل التشكيل، ويُستخدم لصنع العملات والمجوهرات. أنا أحب الخواتم الذهبية!

Diamond is a rare mineral—even more valuable than gold!

الألماس معدن نادر، وقيمته تفوق قيمة الذهب بكثير!

Copper is a strong metal which we use electrical wires, pipes, and tools. It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert.

النحاس معدن قوي نستخدمه في الأسلاك الكهربائية والأنابيب والأدوات. وهو أرخص من الذهب. تحصل مصر على معظم النحاس والذهب من الصحراء الشرقية.

Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. It's found in many places in Egypt.

الحديد معدن شديد القوة، ويُستخدم في صناعة السيارات والسفن والطائرات والجسور. ويوجد في أماكن كثيرة في مصر.

To get minerals, miners dig deep into the ground. But minerals are non-renewable—they take millions of years to form! So we must use them wisely and never waste them.

للحصول على المعادن، يقوم عمال المناجم بالحفر عميقاً في الأرض. لكن المعادن غير متجددة، فهي تحتاج إلى ملايين السنين لتتكون! لذلك يجب أن نستخدمها بحكمة وألا نهدرها أبداً.



Language In Use

Comparative Adjectives

Usage الاستخدام

- We use **comparative adjectives** to compare two people, things, animals, etc. نستخدم صفات المقارنة لنقارن بين اثنين من الأشخاص أو الأشياء أو الحيوانات، إلخ.

Form التكوين 1) With short adjectives (1 syllable), we use...

adj. (صفة) + er + than

e.g. Gold is **cheaper than** diamond.

Spelling rules

- ① If an **adjective** ends in a **vowel** and a **consonant**, **double the consonant** before you add **(er)**. إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم نضيف (er).

e.g. The elephant is **bigger than** the lion.

- ② If an adjective ends in **(e)**, we add **(r)** to the end of the adjective. إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e)، نضيف (r) فقط إلى نهاية الصفة.

e.g. The green T-shirt is **larger than** the red one.

- ③ If an adjective ends in a **consonant** and **(y)**, change **(y)** to **(i)** and add **(er)**. إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y)، وقبله حرف ساكن، نحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er).

e.g. Amira is **happier than** Talia.

2) With most long adjectives (2 syllables), we use...

more / less + long adjective + than

e.g. Diamond is **more valuable than** gold.

● لاحظ

There are **some irregular adjectives**. يوجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة "يتغير شكلها".

good → better than

bad → worse than

little → less than

many / much → more than

e.g. This test is **better than** the last one.



Practice on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Ali is than Omar.
a) tall b) taller c) the tallest d) tallest
2. Winter is colder summer.
a) the b) then c) that d) than
3. Your new tablet is than your old one.
a) better b) best c) that d) than
4. Copper is useful than gold.
a) more b) many c) little d) worst
5. The orange tree is than the apple tree.
a) green b) greener c) little d) best
6. Gold is than diamond.
a) cheap b) cheaper c) cheapest d) more cheap.
7. Amira is than Mariam.
a) happy b) happier c) happiest d) as happy
8. Diamond is valuable than gold.
a) good b) many c) best d) more

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The blue car is (expensive) than the red car.
2. Copper is (valuable) than diamond.
3. Books are (good) than movies.
4. Ahmed is (tall) than Seif.
5. Girls are (wise) than boys.
6. This movie is (bad) than the last one.
7. I have (much) money than my brother.
8. Safia is (old) than Hoor.
9. The ocean is (deep) than the river.
10. Eman is (happy) than Heba.

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Under the, we find precious minerals.
a) bed b) table c) wall d) earth
- Minerals are used to make things.
a) bad b) ugly c) happy d) important
- Gold is to shape.
a) difficult b) hard c) important d) easy
- Diamond is a mineral.
a) common b) known c) rare d) bad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- To get minerals, dig deep into the ground.
a) flames b) miners c) olives d) teachers
- Minerals are renewable.
a) none b) non- c) no d) any
- Minerals take millions of years to
a) run b) stay c) form d) from
- We can find minerals
a) underground b) in ground c) into ground d) above ground
- We use to make cars, ships, airplanes and bridges.
a) gold b) silver c) copper d) iron
- Iron is found in many in Egypt.
a) pools b) places c) lakes d) rivers
- We use to make electrical wires, pipes and tools.
a) plastic b) wood c) gold d) copper
- Egypt gets copper and gold from the Desert.
a) Southern b) Northern c) Western d) Eastern

Lesson (2)

9. Copper is than gold.
a) bigger b) cheaper c) little d) more expensive
10. Diamond is a mineral.
a) rare b) known c) common d) tall
11. Diamond is valuable than gold.
a) much b) many c) less d) more
12. Gold is to shape.
a) hard b) difficult c) easy d) giant
13. People use gold for making
a) puppets b) jewelry c) dolls d) cars

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Copper – mineral resources – non-renewable – ships

Minerals are precious materials that we find underground. Gold, diamond, copper, and iron are all 1)..... . Each one is special. Gold is soft and shiny, perfect for jewelry. 2)..... is great for wires. Iron is strong and used to make cars and ships. Metals and minerals are 3)..... , so we must use them wisely.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Mineral resources are natural things found inside the earth. They are used to make many things. We use iron to make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. We use copper to make electrical wires, pipes, and tools. We use gold for making jewelry and coins. Mineral resources are taken from the earth by miners. They are important for our daily lives and help us do many useful things. We should use them wisely because they are non-renewable.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mineral resources are things.
a) nature b) natural c) normal d) local
2. The underlined word "inside" is the opposite of
a) outside b) out c) under d) above

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. Why should we use minerals wisely?
5. What do we use iron for?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. super - is - Iron - strong - .
.....
2. rare - Diamond - a - mineral - is - .
.....
3. you - seen - a crystal - Have - ever - ?
.....
4. used - jewelry - Gold - for - is - making - .
.....
5. to make - What - wire - use - we - do - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The snake is (thin) than the crocodile.
2. The clown is (funny) than the actor.
3. Anas is taller (then) Seif.
4. Gold is (less) valuable than copper.
5. Hoor is (many) beautiful than Mena.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. mineral resources are important
2. do we make jewelry with gold

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Mineral Resources

Guiding elements:

(gold - diamond - copper)

Lesson (3)

Story Time:

"Just Watch!"—a Story by the Little Digger

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

digger	حفار (آلة)	thick	سميك
cargo	شحنة (بضائع)	path	ممر

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

huge	ضخم	strength	قوة	popular	مشهور
proud	فخور	goods	بضائع	clear	خالي
shore	شاطئ	route = way	طريق - مسار	mud	طين

Definitions

تعريفات

cargo	goods which are carried by a large ship	شحنه (بضائع)
digger	a machine or tool used for digging	حفار (آلة)
give up	to stop trying	يئأس - يستسلم
path	a route or way for traveling	طريق - مسار
thick	something that is not thin	سميك
load	to put things onto ships	يُحمل (بضائع)

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
admire يُعجب بـ	admire ^d
sail يُبحر	sail ^{ed}
load يُحمل	load ^{ed}
pull يسحب / يجر	pull ^{ed}
offer يعرض	offer ^{ed}

Present	Past
stare يُحدق	stare ^d
bother يضايق	bother ^{ed}
clear يُزيل	clear ^{ed}
fail يُخفق / يفشل	fail ^{ed}
move يُحرك	move ^d

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
see يرى	saw
let يدع / يترك	let

Present	Past
dig يحفر	dug
learn يتعلم	learnt (ed)

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

across the ocean	عبر المحيط	ready to help	جاهز للمساعدة
come close to	تأتي بالقرب من	something went wrong	حدث خطأ
got stuck in the mud	علقت في الطين	none of them	لا واحد منهم
pull out	يسحب - يخرج	got to work right away	بدأ في العمل على الفور
stare at	يحدق في	What matters is ...	ما يهم هو ...
size doesn't matter	الحجم لا يهم		

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

Everyone admired the big ship. It was huge, and proud as it sailed across the ocean. I was just a little digger on the shore—not big, not popular—but always ready to help.

أعجب الجميع بالسفينة الكبيرة، كانت ضخمة وفخورة وهي تسبح طريقها عبر المحيط. أما أنا فكانت مجرد حفار صغير على الشاطئ، لست كبيراً ولا مشهوراً. لكنني دائماً مستعد للمساعدة.

One morning, I watched the big ship come close to shore to load some cargo. But then, something went wrong. It got too close and got stuck in the thick, heavy mud.

في صباح أحد الأيام، شاهدت السفينة الكبيرة تقترب من الشاطئ لتحصيل بعض البضائع. لكن فجأة حدث خطأ، فقد اقتربت أكثر من اللازم وعلقت في الطين الكثيف والثقيل.

The ship tried and tried to move, but it couldn't. Other big machines rushed to help, but none of them could pull it out. Then I saw everyone starting to give up. "I can help!" I said.

حاولت السفينة مراراً أن تتحرك، لكنها لم تستطع. أسرع آلات ضخمة أخرى للمساعدة، لكن أي منها لم يتمكن من سحبها. عندما رأيت الجميع يبدأون بالاستسلام، قلت: «أنا أستطيع المساعدة»

The big machines stared at me and laughed. "You? You're so small!" But I didn't let that bother me. I smiled and said, "Just watch!"

حدقت الآلات الكبيرة بي وضحكت قائلة: «أنت؟ أنت صغير جداً!» لكنني لم أسمح لذلك أن يزعجني، ابتسمت وقلت: «فقط

شاهدوا!!»



Lesson (3)

I got to work right away, digging carefully around the ship and clearing the mud. It took a long time, but I didn't stop. Finally, the path was clear, and the big ship floated free!

وبدأت العمل فوراً، أحفر بحذر حول السفينة وأزيل الطين. استغرق الأمر وقتاً طويلاً، لكنني لم أتوقف. وأخيراً، أصبح الطريق خالياً، وعادت السفينة لتطفو بحرية!

The ship looked at me, amazed. "Thank you, little digger! I didn't think someone so small could help me." I smiled again and said, "Size doesn't matter. What matters is using your strength to help others."

نظرت السفينة إليّ بدهشة وقالت: «شكراً لك أيها الحفار الصغير! لم أكن أظن أن شخصاً بهذا الصغير يمكنه مساعدتي.» ابتسمت مرة أخرى وقلت: «الحجم لا يهم، ما يهم هو أن تستخدم قوتك لمساعدة الآخرين.»

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The digger was bigger than the ship. (.....)
2. The big ship did not get stuck in the mud. (.....)
3. Other big machines pulled the ship out of the mud. (.....)
4. The little digger helped the big ship. (.....)
5. The big ship was grateful and thanked the little digger. (.....)
6. The little digger said that size matters. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions.

1. Why did the big ship get stuck?
.....
2. Who tried to help the big ship but failed?
.....
3. Why did the big ship and the little digger become best friends?
.....
4. What do we learn from the story?
.....



Pronunciation

A prefix

A **prefix** is a group of letters that is added before a word to change its meaning.

البادئة هي مجموعة من الحروف تُضاف في بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

- The prefix "**dis-**" means "not".
- The prefix "**bi-**" means "two".
- The prefix "**mis-**" means "wrongly".
- If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the base word.

إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية مكونة من مقطع لفظي واحد، فإن الشدة تقع على الكلمة الأساسية.

Look, listen and say.

انظر، واستمع وقل.

necessary

I always **misspell** the word "necessary".

أنا دائماً أكتب كلمة «necessary» بشكل خاطئ.



I often **misplace** my glasses.

أنا كثيراً ما أضع نظارتي في غير مكانها.



I rode my **bicycle** to the park yesterday.

ركبت دراجتي إلى الحديقة بالأمس.



He **dislikes** playing football.

إنه لا يحب لعب كرة القدم.

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Everyone the big ship.
a) cooked b) smiled c) admired d) played
- The ship was huge and
a) proud b) small c) tiny d) happy
- The ship sailed across the
a) lake b) river c) ocean d) sea
- I was a little on the shore.
a) player b) digger c) driver d) diver

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The digger was than the ship.
a) bigger b) smaller c) taller d) thinner
- The big ship stuck in the mud.
a) had b) put c) got d) made
- Other big machines pulled the ship of the mud.
a) into b) in c) out d) out
- The little helped the big ship.
a) digger b) loader c) rider d) fighter
- Goods which are carried by a large ship are called
a) load b) thick c) cargo d) path
- A is a machine or tool used for digging.
a) cargo b) digger c) path d) thick
- Give means to stop trying.
a) out b) off c) into d) up
- A is a route or way for travelling.
a) hill b) bell c) path d) size
- Something that is not thin is
a) small b) thin c) thick d) light

Unit (5)

10. means to put things onto ships.
a) Road b) Flood c) Load d) Code
11. The little digger said that doesn't matter.
a) size b) eyes c) ice d) mice
12. I always the word "necessary".
a) disagree b) dislike c) misspell d) unimportant
13. I often my glasses.
a) misspell b) misplace c) displace d) dislike
14. He playing football.
a) disagree b) misspells c) dislikes d) unlike

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

thick - wrong - thin - close

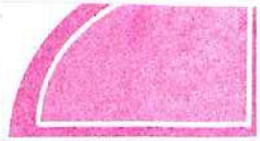
One morning, I watched the big ship come close to shore to load some cargo. But then, something went 1)..... . It got too 2)..... and got stuck in the 3)..... , heavy mud.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A big ship got stuck in the mud. It couldn't move. A digger came to help. Other big machines rushed to help. They looked at the digger and said you're so small. He didn't listen to them. The digger dug the mud around the ship. Slowly, the ship started to move. The digger helped the ship get out of the mud. The ship was happy and said thank you to the digger. Now the ship can go on its way again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "small" is
a) tiny b) big c) happy d) glad
2. The ship got in the mud.
a) gone b) cut c) stuck d) broken



Lesson (3)

3) Answer the following questions.

- Who came to help the big ship?
- What did the digger do?
- What did the ship do to the digger?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- did - stuck - the big - get - Why - ship - ?
.....
- digger - The - ship - than - the - was - bigger - .
.....
- do - the story - we - What - learn - from - ?
.....
- said - matter - little - The digger - that - doesn't - size - .
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

- everyone admired the big ship
.....
- what makes someone really strong
.....
- i can help you
.....

7 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

The ship and the digger

Guiding elements:

(big - dig - stuck)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing: Who Am I? Think and Create

Vocabulary

لمفردات

cloud	سحابه	sweat	العرق
thirsty	عطشان	shape	شكل / يُشكل
flood	يفيض (بالماء)	percentage	نسبة مئوية
a tear	دمعة	destroy	يدمر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
bathe يستحم - يغتسل	bathe ^d
cry يبكي	crie ^d
need يحتاج	need ^{ed}
search يبحث	search ^{ed}

Present	Past
clean ينظف	clean ^{ed}
cool يُبرد	cool ^{ed}
destroy يُدمر	destroy ^{ed}
flood يفيض بالماء	flood ^{ed}

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
say يقول	said
freeze يتجمد	froze

Present	Past
hurt يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt
fall يسقط / يقع	fell

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

search for	يبحث عن	quiet and still	هادئ و ساكن
part of	جزء من	wild and crashing	عنيف و متصادم (جامح)
made up of	(مكون / يتألف) من	breathe in	يتنفس

Lessons (4 & 5)

Read the text.

I Am Water

أنا الماء

I am water. You might see me in a glass, a river, a cloud, or a tear. I can be quiet and still, or wild and crashing. I sleep in lakes and dance in the rain.

أنا الماء. قد تراني في كأس، أو في نهر، أو في سحابة، أو في دمعة. أستطيع أن أكون هادئًا ساكنًا، أو جامحًا هادئًا. أنام في البحيرات، وأرقص في المطر.

People drink me when they're thirsty, bathe in me when they're dirty and cry me when they're hurt. Plants need me, animals search for me, and without me—life would stop.

يشربني الناس حين يعطشون، ويغتسلون بي حين يتسخون، ويبكونني حين يتألمون. تحتاجني النباتات، وتبحث عني الحيوانات، ولولا لي توقفت الحياة.

Sometimes, I help. I clean. I cool. I grow things. Sometimes, I destroy. I flood. I freeze. I fall too hard. But I never stop moving. I am always part of something greater— clouds, oceans, even sweat. I am water. I have no shape, but I can shape the world.

أحيانًا أساعد؛ وأنظف، أبرد، وأنمي الأشياء. وأحيانًا أدمر؛ أغرق، أجمد، وأهطل بشدة. لكنني لا أتوقف عن الحركة أبدًا. فأنا دائمًا جزء من شيء أعظم: السحب، والمحيطات، وحتى العرق. أنا الماء. لا شكل لي، ولكنني أستطيع أن أشكل العالم.



Think!

What percentage of our bodies is made up of water?

ما هي نسبة الماء في أجسامنا؟





Writing skills

Writing Object-Perspective Narratives

كتابة موضوع من منظور سردي

1) First Person:

ضمير المتكلم:

Use "I", "me", "my"

استخدم ضمائر مثل: I, me, my

2) Non-living thing:

شيء غير حي:

What are you? (Water? Copper? Oil?)

«ما أنت؟ (ماء؟ نحاس؟ زيت؟)»

3) Description:

الوصف:

Use the 5 senses and other adjectives.

استخدم الحواس الخمس والصفات الأخرى.

4) Ending:

النهاية:

Why are you important?

لماذا أنت مهم؟

This type of writing where non-human things like objects, animals, or natural resources "speak" improves your creativity, and improves your descriptive writing skills.

هذا النوع من الكتابة، حيث تتحدث الأشياء غير البشرية مثل الجمادات أو الحيوانات أو الموارد الطبيعية، يُنمّي إبداعك ويحسن

مهاراتك في الكتابة الوصفية.



Model

Title: I Am Gold

I sleep deep under the earth, hidden and quiet. People search for me, dream about me, and admire me. I sit in the crowns of kings and the rings of queens. I am soft and beautiful. I am treasured because I am valuable. I am gold.

أنا أنام في أعماق الأرض، مختبئاً في هدوء. يبحث الناس عني، ويحلمون بي، ويعجبون بجمالي. أزين تيجان الملوك وخواتم الملكات. أنا ناعم وجميل، ومحبوب لأتني ثمين وغالي. أنا الذهب.

Think and Create A Poster

Art Time!

Gold is a valuable resource. What do you consider valuable in your life?

الذهب مورد ثمين. ما الذي تعتبره ثمينًا في حياتك؟

Family? Friends? Pets? Teachers?

العائلة؟ الأصدقاء؟ الحيوانات الأليفة؟ المعلمون؟

Create a poster titled "My Gold" and draw/glue pictures of the people and things that are valuable to you.

اصنع ملصقًا بعنوان (ذهبي) وقم برسم/لصق صور للأشخاص والأشياء التي تراها ثمينة بالنسبة لك.

Make a Poster: "My Gold".



My parents

والديّ



My sister

أختي



My brother

أخي



My teacher

مُعَلِّمَتِي



My pet

حيواني الأليف

Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We water every day.
a) drink b) read c) jump d) write
2. Water can be rain, rivers, lakes, or
a) oceans b) books c) chairs d) rooms
3. Plants and animals need water to
a) sleep b) live c) play d) cook
4. Water is clear and has no
a) color b) shape c) food d) sound

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You might see in a glass, a river, or a cloud.
a) juice b) oil c) water d) petrol
2. A is made up of drops of water.
a) tear b) gear c) wear d) pear
3. Water can be quiet and
a) tell b) sell c) bell d) still
4. Sometimes water can be wild and
a) crashing b) flashing c) walking d) running
5. People drink water when they're
a) tired b) thirsty c) lived d) sleepy
6. We when we're dirty.
a) bath b) path c) bathe d) walk
7. When we're hurt, we
a) cry b) play c) run d) sleep
8. need water for irrigation.
a) Schools b) Animals c) Stars d) Plants

Lessons (4 & 5)

9. Animals search water.

- a) at b) in c) for d) out

10. is part of water.

- a) Sweat b) sweet c) Delete d) Fleet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stop - plants - thirsty - do

I'm water. People drink me when they're 1), bathe in me when they're dirty and cry me when they're hurt. 2) need me, animals search for me, and without me—life would 3) Sometimes, I destroy. I flood. I freeze. I fall too hard.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Water is very important for all living things on Earth. Water helps our bodies work properly. We use water for washing, cleaning and farming. Rivers, lakes and oceans are sources of water. Without water, life wouldn't be possible. Saving water is important for future.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We need to drink every day.

- a) oil b) water c) gas d) petrol

2. Water helps our bodies work

- a) proper b) properly c) broke d) got

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the main idea of the text?

4. What do we use water for?

5. How is life without water?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. drink - People - when - are - they - thirsty - water - .

2. shape - Water - no - has - .

3. can - us - water - How - help - ?

4. use - the dishes - We - water - wash - to - .

5. without - live - Can - water - we - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

1. people drink when they are thirsty

2. how can we use water

7 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Water

Guiding elements:

(rivers - washing - drinking)



Review on Unit (5)

Vocabulary

natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	wheat	قمح
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	cotton	قطن
water	ماء	wise / wisely	حكيم - بحكمة
soil	تربة زراعية	dry	جاف
minerals	معادن	crops	محاصيل
tear	دمعة	secrets	أسرار
wind	رياح	copper	نحاس
fertile	خصب	diamond	الماس
electricity	كهرباء	valuable	قيم (ذو قيمة)
nature	الطبيعة	pipes	مواسير
natural gas	غاز طبيعي	tools	أدوات
iron	حديد	miners	عمال المناجم
gold	ذهب	path	ممر / طريق

Pronunciation

mis-

spell → **misspell**
place → **misplace**

bi-

cycle → **bicycle**

dis-

likes → **dislikes**

Language (Comparative Adjectives)

Form التكوين

adj. (صفة قصيرة) + er + than

Example: Gold is **cheaper than** diamond.

Amira is **happier than** Talia.

more / less + صفة طويلة + than

Example: Diamond is **more valuable than** gold.



Writing Corner

- Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Natural Resources

Natural resources like water, air, soil, and minerals are important for all people. They make the country grow. Saving natural resources keeps them for our children in the future. It also helps to keep our planet healthy.

Metals and minerals

Metals and minerals are formed naturally inside the earth. We use them for making many things. We use gold for making jewelry. We use copper for making electrical wires. We use iron for making bridges.

The ship and the digger

A big ship got stuck in the mud. It couldn't move. A digger came to help. The digger dug the mud around the ship. The ship started to move. The digger helped the ship get out of the mud.

Water

Water is very important in our daily lives. We can't live without water. We use it in many things. We use it for drinking, washing, cleaning, and watering the plants. The Nile River is the most important source of water in Egypt.

Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

مصادر طبيعية	ماء
وقود حفري	خشب
ضوء الشمس	كهرباء
رياح	قطن
معادن	الطبيعة
تربة زراعية	حديد

Lesson (2)

ذو قيمة (قيم)	نادر
الماس	مواسير
نحاس	أسلاك كهربائية
حديد	عمال المناجم
عملات معدنية	غير متجدد
مجوهرات	يتشكل / يتكون

Lesson (3)

حفار	فخور
يُحمل	معروف / مشهور
شحنة	سفينة
سميك	آلات / ماكينات
يتوقف	يحدث
ممر / طريق	يسحب / يجز
يُعجب بـ	بضايق

Lessons (4 & 5)

دمعه	هادئ
يستحم	يبحث عن
يدمر	يؤذي / يضر
يعرق	يسقط / يقع

Activities On Unit 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Water is very for life.
a) important b) sad c) happy d) hard
- We water every day.
a) eat b) sleep c) read d) drink
- Water helps us stay
a) tired b) sick c) healthy d) ill
- We can't without water.
a) read b) live c) sing d) dance

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We when we are dirty.
a) live b) sleep c) bathe d) eat
- Give means to stop trying.
a) up b) in c) off d) out
- Egypt's deserts contain many such as gold and iron.
a) companies b) crops c) minerals d) secrets

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Copper – diamond – mineral resources – non-renewable

Minerals are precious materials that we find underground. Gold, diamond, copper, and iron are all 1) Each one is special. Gold is soft and shiny, perfect for jewelry. 2) is great for wires. Iron is strong and used to make cars and ships. Metals and minerals are 3), so we must use them wisely.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Natural resources are things we find in nature, like water and trees. Natural resources help us in our daily lives. The Nile River provides water for drinking and farming. The Nile is the most important water resource in Egypt. We have oil and natural gas. We use oil and natural gas for making fuel and electricity. For farming, we grow cotton, wheat and many kinds of fruit. We must save natural resources.

Activities On Unit (5)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is about resources.
a) nature b) natural c) physical d) chemical
- Natural resources are things we in nature.
a) find b) buy c) sell d) give

B) Answer the following questions.

- Mention the natural resources in the text.
- What does the Nile River provide?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- used - jewelry - Gold - for - is - making - .
.....

- find - we - Where - minerals - can - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Hoor is (happy) than Safia.
- Diamond is (expensive) than gold.

7 Punctuate the following.

- can the ship float
.....
- the digger was helpful
.....

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Minerals

Guiding elements:

(gold - diamond - copper)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

daily - resources - trees - water - nature

- Anas : Do you know what natural 1)..... are?
 Sefi : They are things we find in 2).....
 Anas : Like what?
 Sefi : Like 3)..... and trees.
 Anas : Do they help us in our 4)..... lives?
 Sefi : Yes, they are.

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

important - earth - iron - minerals

- Safia : What can we find under the 1).....?
 Hoor : We can find 2).....
 Safia : Mention some minerals.
 Hoor : Gold, diamond and 3).....
 Safia : What do we use them for?
 Hoor : For making 4)..... things.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- The Nile River is the most important resource in Egypt.
 a) wind b) water c) sand d) oil
- Egypt's land along the Nile is , so we can grow food.
 a) fertile b) poor c) dry d) wise
- Natural resources like minerals help our country
 a) sleep b) play c) write d) grow
- She has books than her brother.
 a) many b) more c) much d) most
- This test is than the last one.
 a) well b) better c) more good d) good

Unit 6

The Talking Earth

الأرض الناطقة



By: Jean Craighead George

Learning Outcomes

Speaking Ask and answer questions about the story

اطرح وأجب عن أسئلة حول القصة

Answer comprehension questions about the story

أجب عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالقصة

Reading Analyze the elements of the story

حلل عناصر القصة

Answer critical thinking questions about the story

أجب عن أسئلة التفكير النقدي حول القصة

Writing Rewrite the story from the heroine's perspective, demonstrating comprehension, and creative narrative skills

أعد كتابة القصة من منظور البطلة، مبيّنًا الفهم ومهارات السرد الإبداعي

The Talking Earth

Characters



Billie Wind

بيلي ويند

She learned how to catch fish, make fire, and find shelter.

تعلمت كيفية صيد السمك، وإشعال النار، والعثور على مأوى.



Billie's family

عائلة بيلي

They believed that the Earth could talk and share wisdom.

كانوا يؤمنون بأن الأرض يمكنها التحدث ومشاركة الحكمة.



The elders

كبار السن (الحكماء)

They told Billie to go into the Everglades National Park alone and listen to the Earth.

طلبوا من بيلي أن تذهب وحدها إلى متنزه إيفرجليدز الوطني وتستمع إلى الأرض.

Story Elements

عناصر القصة

Characters

الشخصيات

Billie Wind
Billie's family
The elders

Setting

المكان

- Florida
- Everglades
National Park

Moral / العبرة / المغزى

Everything in nature is connected. We must take care of it, or the balance will be broken.

كل ما في الطبيعة مترابط، وعلينا أن نعتني بها وإلا اختل توازنها.

Definitions

native	the first person who lived in a place	السكان الأصليون
tribe	a group of people who live together and share the same language, culture, and history	قبيلة
elders	older people who are wise and respected	كبار السن / الحكماء
shelter	a safe place that protects someone from bad weather or danger	مأوى
survive	to stay alive, especially in dangerous situations	يحيى / يبقى على قيد الحياة
attack	to try to hurt someone	يهاجم
struggle	to have a hard time doing something	يكافح
wisdom	using what you know to make good choices	الحكمة
disappointed	feeling sad because something didn't happen as expected	مُحبط
hoot	the sound an owl makes	نعيق (صوت البومة)
the wild	a place in nature where animals and plants live freely	البرية
pack	put things together to carry or take with you	يحزم / يعي
swamp	wet, muddy area of land that has a lot of water, trees, and plants	مستنقع

Story Vocabulary



canoe

زورق



The Earth

الأرض



Everglades

مستنقعات إيفرجليدز



alligator

تمساح



owl

بومة



National Park

محمية وطنية



shell

صدفة



scientist

عالم



swamp

مستنقع



splash

رش / طرطشة (الماء)

Parts of the story

1 The Beginning

Billie didn't believe that the Earth could talk. She thought it was just an old story, but her family believed it was true.

لم تكن بيلي تؤمن بأن الأرض يمكن أن تتحدث. كانت تظن أن الأمر مجرد حكاية قديمة، لكن عائلتها كانت تؤمن أنه حقيقي.

2 The Middle

Billie went into the Everglades alone. At first, she was scared, but then she watched the animals and learned how they survive.

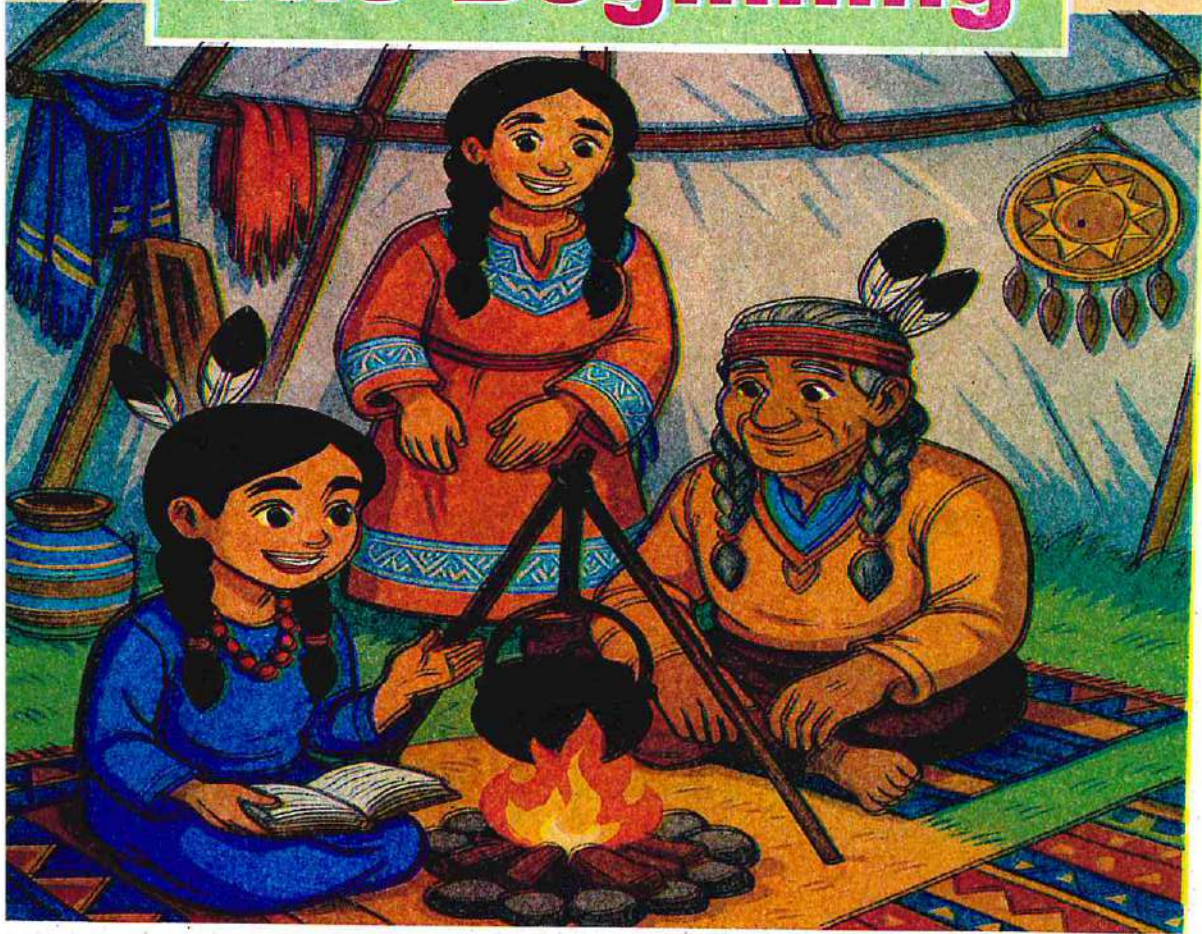
ذهبت بيلي وحدها إلى إيفرجليدز. في البداية كانت خائفة، لكن بعد ذلك راقبت الحيوانات وتعلمت كيف تبقى على قيد الحياة.

3 The End

Billie understood that nature could talk through the wind, animals, and nature.

أدركت بيلي أن الطبيعة يمكن أن تتحدث من خلال الرياح والحيوانات والطبيعة.

The Beginning



Billie Wind was a young Native American girl who lived in Florida. She loved science and dreamed of becoming a scientist when she grew up. But her family believed that the Earth could "talk" and share wisdom with those who listened to it.

كانت بيلي ويند فتاة شابة من السكان الأصليين لأمريكا تعيش في ولاية فلوريدا. كانت تحب العلوم وتحلم بأن تصبح عالمة

عندما تكبر. غير أن عائلتها كانت تؤمن بأن الأرض يمكنها أن "تتحدث" وتشارك الحكمة مع من يستمع إليها.

They said the wind, the water, and the animals all had something to teach.

Billie did not believe this. She thought these were just old stories with no real meaning.

قالوا إن الرياح والماء والحيوانات جميعها لديها ما تُعلّمه. لكن بيلي لم تصدّق ذلك. إذ كانت ترى أنها مجرد حكايات قديمة

بلا معنى حقيقي.



One day, Billie Wind told the elders of her tribe that she did not believe that the Earth could talk. The elders were disappointed. They told Billie that if she did not believe what they said, then she should go into the Everglades National Park alone and listen to the Earth.

في أحد الأيام، أخبرت بيلي ويند شيوخ قبيلتها بأنها لا تؤمن بأن الأرض يمكن أن تتحدث. شعر الشيوخ بخيبة أمل، وأخبروا بيلي إنها إن لم تصدّق ما يقولونه، فعليها أن تذهب وحدها إلى حديقة إيفرجليدز الوطنية لتستمع إلى الأرض.

Only then would she understand. Billie did not want to go, but she had no choice. She packed her canoe and went into the Everglades, not sure what she might find.

عندها فقط ستفهم. لم تكن بيلي ترغب في الذهاب، لكنها لم يكن لها خيار آخر. حزمّت أمتعتها في قاربها وانطلقت إلى إيفرجليدز، وهي غير متأكدة مما قد تجده هناك.

Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) Billie Wind was a young Native American girl. (.....)
- 2) She lived in Florida. (.....)
- 3) Billie loved science. (.....)
- 4) Billie wanted to be a doctor when she grew up. (.....)
- 5) Her family believed that the Earth could talk. (.....)
- 6) Billie believed that the old stories had meaning. (.....)
- 7) The elders were happy with Billie's opinion. (.....)
- 8) The elders told Billie to go to Everglades National Park. (.....)
- 9) Billie packed her canoe before she left. (.....)
- 10) Billie was sure what she might find in the Everglades. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Who was Billie Wind?
.....
- 2) Where did Billie Wind live?
.....
- 3) What did Billie dream of becoming?
.....
- 4) What did Billie's family believe could talk?
.....
- 5) What did the elders tell Billie to do?
.....
- 6) Why were the elders disappointed?
.....
- 7) Where did Billie go alone?
.....
- 8) What did Billie pack before going?
.....
- 9) When would Billie understand the Earth?
.....
- 10) How did Billie feel about going to the Everglades?
.....

The Middle



At first, Billie struggled to survive in the Everglades. She had no shelter, no food, and no one to help her. The swamp was full of strange sounds, and she felt afraid.

في البداية، كافحت ببلي للبقاء على قيد الحياة في إيفرجليدز. لم يكن لديها مأوى ولا طعام ولا أحد يساعدها. كان المستنقع مليئًا بالأصوات الغريبة، وشعرت بالخوف.

At night, she heard alligators splashing in the water and owls hooting in the trees. She wished she was back home, safe and warm. But slowly, she started to pay attention to the world around her.

في الليل، كانت تسمع تماسيح تتخبط في الماء، وبومًا ينطق بين الأشجار. كانت تتمنى لو أنها عادت إلى منزلها، حيث الأمان والدفء. لكن بمرور الوقت، بدأت تنتبه للعالم من حولها.



She watched the animals closely and saw how they survived. The alligators waited patiently for their food instead of wasting energy. The turtles hid in their shells when danger was near.

راقبت ببلي الحيوانات عن قرب ورأت كيف تبقى على قيد الحياة. فالتماسيح كانت تنتظر طعامها بصبر دون أن تهدر طاقتها، بينما تختبئ السلاحف داخل أصدافها عندما يقترب الخطر.

The birds warned each other when an animal came to attack. Billie realized that nature had its own way of teaching. She learned how to catch fish, make a fire, and find shelter, just like the animals did.

كانت الطيور تحذّر بعضها بعضًا عندما يأتي حيوان للهجوم. عندها أدركت ببلي أن للطبيعة طريقته الخاصة في التعليم تعلمت كيف تصطاد الأسماك، وتشعل النار، وتجد المأوى، تمامًا كما تفعل الحيوانات.

Activities

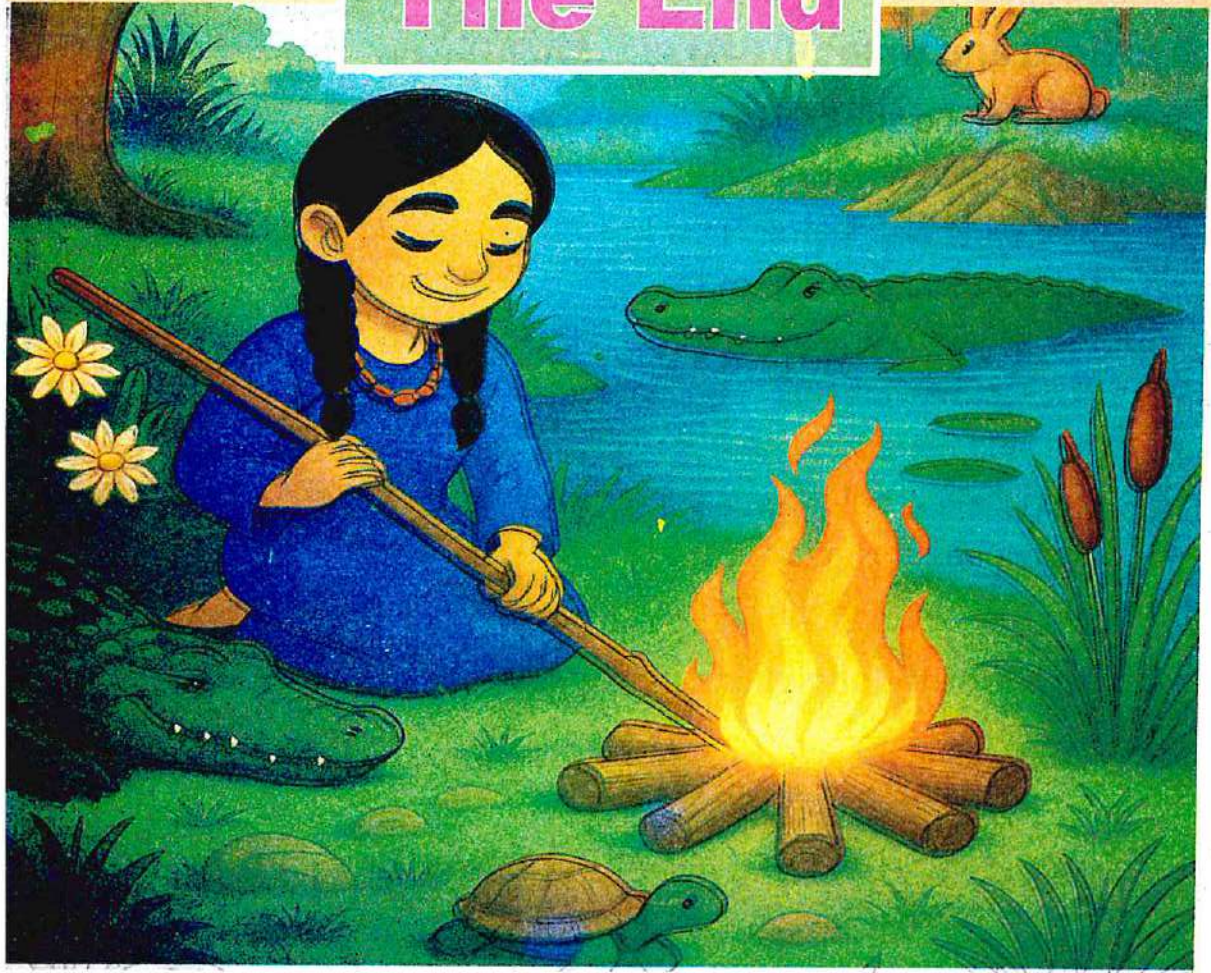
1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) Billie had no shelter in the Everglades. (.....)
- 2) The swamp was quiet and peaceful. (.....)
- 3) Billie heard owls hooting at night. (.....)
- 4) She wished she was at home, safe and warm. (.....)
- 5) Alligators splashed in the water. (.....)
- 6) The turtles hid in their shells when there was danger. (.....)
- 7) Birds warned each other when danger was near. (.....)
- 8) Billie learned how to catch fish and make a fire. (.....)
- 9) Alligators waited patiently for their food. (.....)
- 10) Billie didn't pay attention to the world around her. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where did Billie struggle to survive?
.....
- 2) What was the swamp full of?
.....
- 3) How did Bille feel in the Everglades?
.....
- 4) What were the owls doing?
.....
- 5) What splashed in the water at night?
.....
- 6) What did Billie wish when she was afraid?
.....
- 7) How did the turtles protect themselves?
.....
- 8) What did the birds do when danger came?
.....
- 9) What did Billie realize?
.....
- 10) What did Billie learn from nature?
.....

The End



After many days in the wild, Billie Wind was no longer afraid. She learned how to survive, but more importantly, she learned how to listen.

بعد عدة أيام في البرية، لم تعد بيلي ويند خائفة. فقد تعلّمت كيف تبقى على قيد الحياة، لكن الأهم من ذلك أنها تعلّمت كيف تصغي.

The Earth did talk, not with words, but through the sounds of the wind, the movements of animals, and the changes in the land.

لقد تحدّثت الأرض، لا بالكلمات، بل من خلال أصوات الرياح، وحركات الحيوانات، والتغيرات التي تطرأ على الأرض.

Everything in nature was connected, and if people did not take care of it, the balance would be broken.

كلّ ما في الطبيعة كان مترابطاً، وإن لم يعتنِ الناس بها، فسوف يختلّ توازنها.

Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) Billie Wind was afraid after many days in the wild. (.....)
- 2) She learned how to survive. (.....)
- 3) Billie Wind also learned how to listen. (.....)
- 4) The Earth talked with words. (.....)
- 5) The sounds of the wind helped Billie learn. (.....)
- 6) She saw movements of animals. (.....)
- 7) The land never changed. (.....)
- 8) Everything in nature was connected. (.....)
- 9) People needed to take care of nature. (.....)
- 10) The balance would be broken if people did not care of nature. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Who was in the wild?
.....
- 2) How did Billie feel after many days in the wild?
.....
- 3) What did Billie Wind learn to do in the wild?
.....
- 4) How did the Earth talk?
.....
- 5) How was everything in nature?
.....
- 6) What would happen if people did not care of nature?
.....
- 7) What did Billie learn about nature?
.....
- 8) What's the moral of the story?
.....

General Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) Billie Wind was a young Egyptian girl. (.....)
- 2) Billie dreamed of becoming a scientist. (.....)
- 3) At first, Billie didn't believe that the Earth could talk. (.....)
- 4) Billie heard hippos splashing in the water at night. (.....)
- 5) Turtles hid in their shells when danger was near. (.....)
- 6) Billie didn't learn anything at the end of her journey. (.....)
- 7) Everything in nature was connected. (.....)
- 8) Billie went to the desert to listen to the Earth. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where did Billie Wind live?
.....
- 2) How did Billie feel when she was alone in the Everglades?
.....
- 3) What lesson did Billie learn from nature?
.....
- 4) Why did the elders send Billie into the Everglades?
.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- 1) Billie loved science and dreamed of becoming a when she grew up.
a) scientist b) firefighter c) police officer d) driver
- 2) Billie heard some hooting in the trees.
a) turtles b) dogs c) alligators d) owls
- 3) The turtles hid in their when danger was near.
a) seas b) lakes c) shells d) plants
- 4) Billie had no shelter in the Everglades, so she struggled to
a) survive b) pack c) teach d) attack

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

hooting - swamp - shells

Billie packed her canoe to go into the Everglades. The 1) was full of strange sounds. At night, she heard alligators splashing in the water and owls 2) in the trees. The turtles hid in their 3) when danger was near. The birds warned each other when an animal came to attack. Billie realized that nature had its own way of teaching.

5 Complete the sequence from the box.

nature had its own way of teaching - respect the land -
the Earth could talk

1. Billie didn't believe that
2. She went into the Everglades and realized that
3. She promised to teach others to

6 Read and number the pictures.

- 1 Billie saw alligators, turtles, and birds and learned how they survive.
- 2 Billie's family believed that the wind, the water, and the animals all had something to teach.
- 3 The swamp was full of strange sounds, and Billie wished she was back home.
- 4 Billie learned how to catch fish and make a fire.



7 Read and put the events in order.

- ▶ Billie felt afraid when she first stayed alone in the Everglades.
- ▶ Billie went to the Everglades to listen to the Earth, as the elders told her.
- ▶ Billie learned how to survive by watching the animals and learned how to catch fish and make fire.
- ▶ Billie told the elders that she didn't believe that the Earth could talk.
- ▶ Billie started to listen to the world around her and pay attention to nature.
- ▶ Billie realized that the Earth talks through nature, like the wind and animals, not with words.

1. Billie told the elders that she didn't believe that the Earth could talk.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

8 What should people do to help nature? Check (✓) the right action.

- 1. People should take care of everything in nature. ()
- 2. People should harm nature. ()
- 3. People should be scientists. ()

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. Crocodiles are strong and dangerous. They hunt large animals in or near the water.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Once upon a time, there was a boy named Tom who loved a big, strong apple tree in his garden. Tom used the tree for everything. He made crowns from its leaves and ate its delicious apples.

Lessons (4&5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple ingredients in one bowl. First, you need to cook rice in a pot with water. In another pot, prepare small pasta. Then, boil lentils in water.

Activities on Unit (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. Crocodiles are strong and dangerous.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Sometimes we feel tired after playing sports. In the case, eating some fruit before exercising can give us more energy. Sports also help us stay fit, lose weight, and make our bones stronger.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to share how my habits have changed. In the past, I woke up late on weekends and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning—it makes me feel strong and happy.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

We have an amazing body. The heart is one of the most important organs of our body. It is about the size of your fist. The heart's job is to pump blood to all parts of the body.

Lessons (4&5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Doctors, nurses, pharmacists and paramedics are healthcare workers. Doctors diagnose diseases, and provide treatments. Nurses give support and care for patients. Pharmacists make sure patients receive the correct medicine. Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies.

Listening Texts

Activities on Unit (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Pharmacists play a very important role. They make sure patients receive the correct medicine and give advice on how to use it safely. Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies. They give help on the spot and take patients safely to hospitals.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

A wildfire spread quickly in the forest in U.S.A. It was close to the mountains. It spread quickly because it was dry there, and the winds were so strong.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible, even in the desert. The Nile River gave water and rich soil, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the weather also brought problems like floods, droughts, and sandstorms.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Once upon a time, in a small and quiet village, there were two frogs who were best friends. They lived together in a small pond near the edge of the village. The pond was their home, and they loved it very much.

Lessons (4&5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Lily lived in a cozy little house. It was a sunny morning. She looked out of her window and saw something strange. Big, fluffy clouds were floating upside down. She cried.

The clouds were upside down so the flowers didn't get sunshine.

Activities on Unit (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Droughts happened when there was not enough rain. The Nile's water became low, and the land became dry. Crops could not grow. To solve this, the Ancient Egyptians made irrigation systems to bring water to their fields.

Activities on Review (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Sandstorms, called Khamsin, brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and breathe. People stayed inside to stay safe. They built their homes with thick mud bricks to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Tamer and Adel are good friends. Adel likes going to the club to play sports and video games. Tamer usually goes to the supermarket with his family to pick out groceries. Adel enjoys having coffee and cake at the coffee shop. Tamer and his family often go to restaurants for dinner.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ali lives in a peaceful village with green fields and tall trees. Every morning, he hears birds singing and sees farmers working. On Saturdays, people gather at the main square to shop at the market. At night, he enjoys walking near the fields and watching the stars.

Lessons (4&5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The New Administrative Capital is 45 km east of Cairo. It is a smart city. It has green areas everywhere. The city has government offices, the tallest building in Africa, and a new airport. People can find great jobs and live peacefully there.

Activities on Unit (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy cottages surrounded by green fields and fresh air. There is a market in the main square where people buy and sell fresh fruit and vegetables. Farmers keep their animals in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Egypt's deserts contain gold. We use gold to make jewelry. There are other minerals in the deserts as well. These minerals are used to help our country grow.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make important things. Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to shape. Diamond is a rare mineral—even more valuable than gold!

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Everyone admired the big ship. It was huge, and proud as it sailed across the ocean. I was just a little digger on the shore—not big, not popular—but always ready to help.

Lessons (4&5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Water is very important. We drink it every day. It can be rain, rivers, lakes, or oceans. Plants and animals need water to live. Sometimes water is calm, and sometimes it is strong. Without water, there is no life. Water is clear and has no shape.

Activities on Unit (5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Water is very important for life. We drink water every day. Water helps us stay healthy. We use water for washing and farming. Without water, we can't live.

Answers of paragraphs

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

"Life along the Nile"

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is home to many different animals. Small fish eat water weeds. Crocodiles are strong and dangerous. They eat large animals in or near the water.

Lesson (2)

"Animals in the desert"

The desert is hot and dry. Many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals, like rats or lizards. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Animals help nature stay in balance.

Lesson (3)

"Caring for trees"

Trees are important for us. They give us shade and fruits. We should care for them. We must give them water and protect them. People, birds, and animals need trees.

Lessons (4&5)

"Your favorite Egyptian dish"

Koshari is my favorite dish. It is tasty. It has many simple ingredients. It is made with rice, lentils, chickpeas and crispy onions. We add sauces for flavor. Koshari is young.

Activities on Unit (1)

"The Nile"

The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It's home to many different animals. Small fish, crocodiles, and other animals live in it, we must protect the Nile. It's very important for everyone.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

"How to be healthy"

To be healthy you should do sport. It makes your body strong. You should eat vegetables and fruit. They give us energy. You should walk to be fit and healthy.

Lesson (2)

"Your habits now and then"

My habits have changed. I used to wake up late. Now, I wake up early. Before, I loved chips and sweets. Now, I eat fruits and vegetables. Before, I used to sleep late. Now, I sleep early.

Lesson (3)

"The heart"

The heart is one of the most important organs of our body. The heart pumps blood of all parts of the body. We can take care of our heart by eating good food, exercising and sleeping well.

Lessons (4&5)

"Real heroes"

Doctors, nurses and paramedics are real heroes. Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients. Nurses work around the clock to care for patients. Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies. They take patients safely to hospitals.

Activities on Unit (2)

"How to keep your heart healthy"

It's important to keep your heart healthy. You can keep it healthy by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking a lot of water. Also, exercise helps your heart pump better and keeps you from getting sick.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

"The weather in your city"

The weather in my city is rainy in winter. Sometimes the streets are covered with water. There is a big flood. Many cars get stuck. People stay home for a few days.

Lesson (2)

"Weather in Ancient Egypt"

Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible. The weather also brought problems like floods. The Nile flooded every year. The Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins to control the water.

Lesson (3)

"Frogs"

Frogs are small animals. They live near a pond. They can jump very high. Frogs eat insects. They have long legs. They have fun catching flies, swimming in the cool water.

Lessons (4&5)

"Kindness"

Kindness is a good thing in our life. Kindness and gentle whisper can solve big problems. We must be kind to people. We must talk with people nicely.

Activities on Unit (3)

"The weather in Ancient Egypt"

Ancient Egypt had extreme weather. The Nile flooded every year. The floods were strong and damaged farms. Droughts happened when there was not enough rain.

Activities on Review (1)

"The Nile"

The Nile is the longest river in the world. Small fish live in the Nile River and eat water weeds. There are crocodiles in the Nile. They eat fish, birds and animals.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

"Places in your neighborhood"

There are a lot of places in my neighborhood. I go to the club to play sport and hang out with my friends. I go to the supermarket to buy groceries. I go to the bakery to buy bread and cake.

Lesson (2)

"Life in the village"

Life in the village is peaceful. People there live in cottages. Farmers keep their animals in barns. The main square is the busiest place.

Lessons (4&5)

"The New Administrative Capital"

The New Administrative Capital is east of Cairo. It's a new city that helps reduce crowding. The city is designed to be very smart. It uses modern technology to manage roads, water and energy.

Activities on Unit (4)

"Describe your city"

My city is big and nice. It has many houses, shops and parks. The streets are clean. I see cars and buses. People are kind. I love my city.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

"Treasures of Egypt"

Natural resources are things we find in the nature, like water and trees. The Nile River provides water for drinking and farming. We have oil and natural gas. We use them to make fuel and electricity.

Lesson (2)

"Mineral Resources"

Mineral resources are precious. They are gold, diamond, copper, and iron. We use gold and diamond for making jewelry. We use copper for making electrical wires, pipes and tools.

Lesson (3)

"The ship and the digger"

A big ship got stuck in the mud. It couldn't move. A digger came to help. The digger dug the mud around the ship. Slowly, the ship started to move and got out of the mud.

Lessons (4&5)

"Water"

Water is very important in our lives. We use water for washing and drinking. People drink water when they're thirsty. Bathe in water when they're dirty. You can see water in a glass, a river, a cloud or a tear.

Activities on Unit (5)

"Minerals"

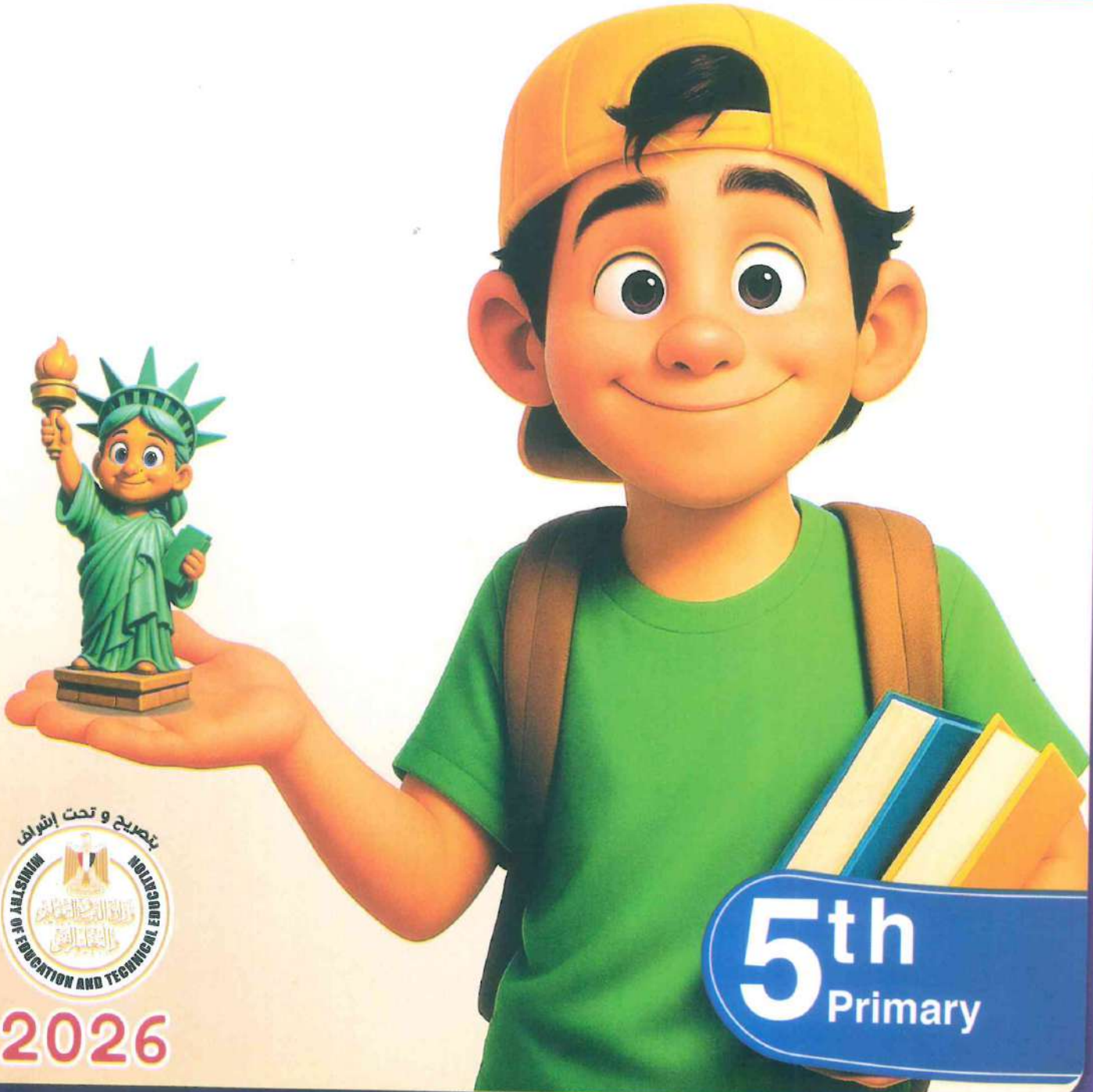
Minerals are very important. We can find them underground. Gold is easy to shape. It's used for making jewelry. Diamond is rare and more expensive than gold. Copper is used for making electrical wires and tools.

AL-BAHER

English

Final Revision

الصف الخامس الابتدائي
First Term



2026

5th
Primary

LANGUAGE

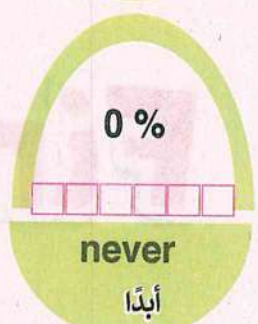
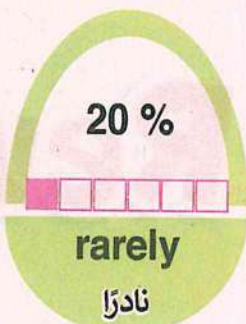
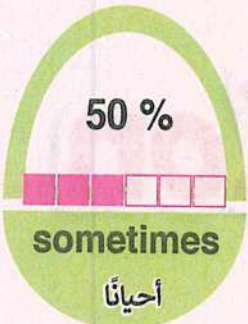
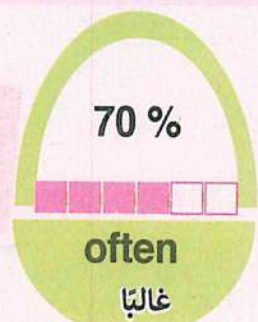
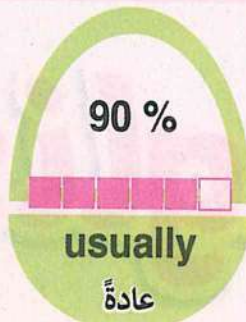
Adverbs of Frequency

ظروف التكرار

We use **adverbs of frequency** to talk about **how often** something happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء ما.

تذكر: تأتي هذه الظروف مع زمن المضارع البسيط:



Remember تذكر

These adverbs come ...

تأتي هذه الظروف ...

1) Before the **main verb**.

١) قبل الفعل الأساسي.

Subject (فاعل) + **adverb** + **main verb**

e.g. Snakes **never** eat plants.

2) After the **verb to "be"** (am / is / are).

٢) بعد فعل «يكون».

Subject (فاعل) + **(am / is / are)** + **adverb**

e.g. Lizards **are sometimes** dangerous.

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I do my homework. My teachers like me.
a) always b) rarely c) never d) sometimes
2. He to the gym.
a) goes often b) goes never c) goes always d) often goes
3. Camels eat grass.
a) usually b) rarely c) every d) never
4. Lizards dangerous.
a) sometimes are b) usually are c) are sometimes d) never are
5. He eats healthy food. He's strong.
a) never b) rarely c) always d) often
6. He wakes up early on Fridays. It is a holiday.
a) always b) never c) usually d) every
7. I go to the gym. I go on Saturday only.
a) never b) always c) rarely d) every
8. He his keys.
a) always forgets b) forgets never
c) forgets always d) forgets often
9. My dad late for work.
a) never is b) is never c) always is d) usually is
10. I eat Koshari. It's yummy.
a) always b) rarely c) every d) never
11. She breakfast at home.
a) eats rarely b) rarely eats
c) eats always d) eats usually
12. My sister late for school.
a) sometimes is b) usually is
c) never is d) is sometimes
13. They visit their grandparents. They go on weekends.
a) never b) since c) often d) every

14. We happy to help.
a) always are b) are always c) is always d) never are
15. I eat burgers. I eat only once a week.
a) always b) rarely c) never d) usually
16. The supermarket busy.
a) is always b) always are c) usually is d) never is
17. It rains in the desert.
a) always b) usually c) rarely d) often

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I (go always) to the park on Sunday.
2. Snakes (usually) eat plants.
3. Lizards (sometimes are) dangerous.
4. She (always) rides a bike. She can't ride it.
5. They (often) go to school on Fridays.
6. Camels (never) store water in their bodies.
7. He (always is) late for school.
8. Mom (always) goes shopping. She goes on Monday only.
9. He (never) eats healthy food. He's fit.
10. I (never) eat pizza. I like it very much.
11. We (go usually) to the club.
12. How (many) do you exercise?
13. The desert (always is) hot and dry.
14. Snakes (never) eat small animals.
15. Boys (usually are) noisy and naughty.
16. I (always) drink soda. It's unhealthy.
17. It (usually) rains in the desert. It's dry.
18. Plants (need always) sun and water.
19. I (never) go to the club. I go there three days a week.
20. Ali (always) does exercise. He is very weak.

Using (a / an / some / any)

We use **(a)** before **singular countable nouns** starting with **a consonant sound**.

نستخدم «a» قبل الأسماء المفردة التي تعد وتبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a banana - a carrot - a potato - a watermelon

e.g. I eat a banana every day.

We use **(an)** before **singular countable nouns** starting with **a vowel sound**.

نستخدم «an» قبل الأسماء المفردة التي تعد وتبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an apple - an egg - an ice cream - an orange - an umbrella

e.g. She eats an egg in the morning.

We use **(some)** with **plural countable nouns** or **uncountable nouns** in **affirmative sentences**.

نستخدم «some» مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد في الجمل المثبتة.

e.g. I have some apples.

e.g. She drank some water.

Uncountable nouns:

بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد

water	ماء	juice	عصير	sugar	سكر
milk	لبن	oil	زيت	salt	ملح

We use **(any)** with **plural countable nouns** or **uncountable nouns** in **negative sentences** and **questions**.

نستخدم «any» مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد في جمل النفي والاستفهام.

e.g. There aren't any apples left.

e.g. Do you have any water?

لا حظ

Request and offer:

نستخدم (some) في سؤالي العرض والطلب.

e.g. Would you like some tea?

«عرض»

e.g. Could I have some water?

«طلب»

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I need apple from the basket.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
2. There is orange on the table.
a) an b) any c) a d) some
3. We don't have milk in the fridge.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
4. She wants sandwich for lunch.
a) some b) a c) any d) an
5. Can I have water, please?
a) a b) an c) some d) any
6. He saw elephant at the zoo.
a) an b) any c) a d) some
7. There aren't books on the shelf.
a) some b) a c) any d) an
8. We bought eggs from the supermarket.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
9. She doesn't have pencils in her bag.
a) an b) any c) a d) some
10. Would you like apple juice?
a) some b) a c) any d) an
11. I saw boy playing football.
a) an b) any c) a d) some
12. Is there rice at home?
a) a b) an c) some d) any
13. We need chairs for the party.
a) some b) a c) any d) an
14. She didn't buy bananas from the market.
a) an b) any c) a d) some
15. Are there eggs in the fridge?
a) a b) an c) some d) any

Language

16. I have friends at school.
a) an b) any c) a d) some
17. He doesn't want tea now.
a) some b) a c) any d) an
18. I need hour to finish my homework.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
19. They didn't see birds in the garden.
a) an b) any c) a d) some
20. Can I have piece of cake?
a) some b) a c) any d) an

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I eat (a) apple every morning.
2. She bought (an) oranges from the shop.
3. We need (any) sugar for the cake.
4. He drinks (any) water before running.
5. There is (a) egg on the table.
6. I saw (an) big elephant at the zoo.
7. They don't have (some) pencils in their bags.
8. Please, give me (any) bread.
9. I don't have (some) friends in this school.
10. We need (a) umbrella because it's raining.
11. She wants (an) banana from the fruit shop.
12. There isn't (some) juice in the fridge.
13. He is reading (a) old book.
14. We should get (a) onion for the salad.
15. Do you have (some) homework today?
16. I saw (a) eagle flying in the sky.
17. She doesn't drink (some) coffee.
18. They need (a) hour to finish the project.
19. I put (a) eraser in my bag.
20. Are there (some) chairs in the class?

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use the **past simple** to talk about finished actions or events in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأفعال التي انتهت في الماضي.

e.g. In ancient Egypt, the Nile River **flooded** every year.

Form التكوين

1) Regular verbs

1 أفعال منتظمة تتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) إلى الفعل.

play → played

smile → smiled

cry → cried

2) Irregular verbs

2 أفعال غير منتظمة وتحفظ كما هي.

go → went

eat → ate

buy → bought

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	بالأمس	in the past	في الماضي
last	الماضي / السابق	in + (2020,)	في «عام ماضي»
ago	منذ	Once	ذات مرة

e.g. I **saw** my friends **last week**.

Negative النفي

Subject (فاعل) + **did not (didn't)** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. The Ancient Egyptians **didn't have** modern tools to help them.

Question السؤال

Yes / No question:

Did + **subject** (فاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + **.....?**

e.g. **Did** you **play** tennis yesterday? - Yes, I **did**. - No, I **didn't**.

Language

Wh- question

Q.W + did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) +?

e.g. What **did** the Ancient Egyptians **do** when the river flooded?

Verb to (be) in the past

Form التكوين

(I / He / She / It / A singular noun) + was

e.g. I **was** happy **yesterday**.

(We / You / They / A plural noun) + were

e.g. They **were** at the club a week **ago**.

Negative النفي

(I / He / She / It / A singular noun) + was not (wasn't)

e.g. Droughts happened when there **wasn't** enough rain.

(We / You / They / A plural noun) + were not (weren't)

e.g. We **weren't** at the cinema **yesterday**.

Question السؤال

Yes / No question:

Was / Were + subject (فاعل) + باقي الجملة?

e.g. **Were** there sandstorms in the past?

- Yes, there **were**.

- No, there **weren't**.

Wh- question

Q.W + was / were + subject (فاعل) + باقي الجملة?

e.g. **Why were** they at the club **yesterday**?

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. They the zoo last weekend.
a) visited b) visit c) visiting d) visits
2. She her room yesterday.
a) cleaning b) cleaned c) clean d) cleans
3. He football with his friends last week.
a) playing b) play c) played d) plays
4. We a movie last night.
a) watches b) watch c) watching d) watched
5. I at home last Monday.
a) was b) were c) is d) are
6. My dad me with my homework yesterday.
a) help b) helped c) helping d) helps
7. Mona a cake yesterday.
a) cooking b) cook c) cooked d) cooks
8. I a book about Egypt last night.
a) read b) reads c) is reading d) reading
9. Ali the teacher a question yesterday.
a) ask b) asked c) asking d) asks
10. The man his car yesterday.
a) fixed b) fix c) fixing d) fixes
11. She the door quickly.
a) opening b) open c) have opened d) opened
12. They their clothes.
a) washed b) is washing c) washing d) washes
13. There a big storm yesterday.
a) was b) were c) is d) are
14. He hard last week.
a) working b) work c) worked d) works
15. We for the test last night.
a) studied b) study c) studying d) studies

Language

16. Sara her friend on the phone yesterday.
a) called b) call c) calling d) calls
17. The boy the wall blue.
a) painted b) paint c) are painting d) painting
18. They to music yesterday.
a) listened b) listen c) listening d) listens
19. He the door quickly.
a) closed b) close c) are closing d) closing
20. We a party last night.
a) have b) has c) having d) had

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I (watch) TV last night.
2. She (were) happy yesterday.
3. We (play) football two days ago.
4. He (clean) his room last Monday.
5. She (were) at school last Monday.
6. I (reads) a book last week.
7. My dad (cook) dinner last night.
8. We (walk) to school yesterday.
9. She (paint) a picture two days ago.
10. They (are) in the park two weeks ago.
11. He (ride) his bike yesterday.
12. I (have) a phone two years ago.
13. We (watch) a movie last night.
14. He (is) tired last night.
15. She (listen) to music two hours ago.
16. My brother (wash) the car yesterday.
17. Did you (has) a car in the past?
18. I (write) a letter yesterday.
19. They (swim) in the pool last Saturday.
20. We (are) in class yesterday.

Prepositions of time

حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

at

We use (at) with ...

نستخدم «at» مع ...

■ **clock times**

أوقات الساعة

e.g. I get up at 6 a.m., every day.

■ **mealtimes**

أوقات الوجبات

e.g. The coffee shop is very busy at lunchtime.

■ **time phrases**

عبارات الوقت

e.g. At night, the village is calm and quiet.

in

We use (in) with ...

نستخدم «in» مع ...

■ **parts of the day**

أجزاء اليوم

e.g. I liked visiting my uncle in the afternoons.

■ **seasons**

فصول السنة

e.g. The weather is hot in summer.

■ **years**

السنوات

e.g. I moved to Alexandria in 2020.

■ **months**

الشهور

e.g. In December, the weather is cold.

on

We use (on) with ...

نستخدم «on» مع ...

■ **days**

الأيام

e.g. On Saturdays, everyone gathers in the community center.

■ **dates**

التواريخ

e.g. My birthday is on June 8th.

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I get up 6 a.m. every day.
a) on b) in c) with d) at
2. The coffee shop is very busy lunchtime.
a) at b) on c) in d) with
3. I liked visiting my uncle the afternoons.
a) on b) in c) by d) at
4. My birthday is June 8th.
a) at b) with c) on d) in
5. night, the village is calm and quiet.
a) At b) In c) With d) On
6. The weather is hot summer.
a) on b) with c) in d) at
7. Saturdays, everyone gathers in the community center.
a) At b) In c) On d) With
8. I moved to Alexandria 2020.
a) in b) on c) at d) with
9. December, the weather is cold.
a) At b) In c) With d) On
10. I was born March.
a) on b) at c) by d) in
11. Let's meet 3 p.m.
a) on b) in c) at d) with
12. The party is Monday.
a) by b) in c) at d) on
13. I like to relax the evening.
a) in b) at c) on d) with
14. I have breakfast with my family Fridays.
a) in b) with c) at d) on
15. I have breakfast early the morning.
a) at b) in c) on d) with

16. We usually play football 5 p.m.
 a) at b) in c) with d) on
17. I see my cousins summer.
 a) on b) with c) at d) in
18. I go to the beach July.
 a) at b) in c) with d) on
19. I celebrate my birthday August 14th.
 a) on b) with c) at d) in
20. Salma was born 2012.
 a) at b) in c) with d) on

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We have lunch (in) 1:00 p.m.
2. The meeting is (at) Monday morning.
3. I go to Matrouh (on) summer.
4. My father goes to the club (at) the evening.
5. My birthday is (on) April.
6. She goes to bed (in) night.
7. We go skiing (at) winter.
8. The train leaves (on) the afternoon.
9. My parents got married (at) June 12th, 2009.
10. The shop is closed (in) Sundays.
11. The train leaves (on) 9:15 a.m.
12. My uncle works late (in) night.
13. We have lunch (at) the afternoon.
14. Who do you see (in) lunchtime?
15. The football match starts (in) 7:30 p.m.
16. Our school trip is (at) April 20th.
17. They usually eat dinner (in) 8 p.m.
18. My sister was born (at) July.
19. I usually drink tea (at) the morning.
20. My family goes camping (on) summer.

Comparative Adjectives

Usage الاستخدام

- We use **comparative adjectives** to compare two people, things, animals, etc.
 نستخدم صفات المقارنة لنقارن بين اثنين من الأشخاص أو الأشياء أو الحيوانات، إلخ.

Form التكوين

- 1) With short adjectives (1 syllable), we use...

adj. (صفة) + er + than

e.g. Gold is **cheaper** than diamond.

Spelling rules

- 1 If an **adjective** ends in a **vowel** and a **consonant**, **double the consonant** before you add **(er)**.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك، نُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم نضيف (er).

e.g. The elephant is **bigger** than the lion.

- 2 If an adjective ends in **(e)**, we add **(r)** to the end of the adjective.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e)، نضيف (r) فقط إلى نهاية الصفة.

e.g. The green T-shirt is **larger** than the red one.

- 3 If an adjective ends in a **consonant** and **(y)**, change **(y)** to **(i)** and add **(er)**.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y)، وقبله حرف ساكن، نحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er).

e.g. Amira is **happier** than Talia.

- 2) With most long adjectives (2 syllables), we use...

more / less + long adjective + than

e.g. Diamond is **more** valuable **than** gold.



There are some irregular adjectives. يوجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة "يتغير شكلها".

good → better than

bad → worse than

little → less than

many / much → more than

e.g. This test is **better** than the last one.

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Ali is than Omar.
a) tall b) tallest c) most tall d) taller
2. This test is than the last one.
a) hard b) harder c) more hard d) hardest
3. Gold is than diamond.
a) cheaper b) cheap c) most cheap d) cheapness
4. Winter is than summer.
a) coldest b) colder c) most cold d) cold
5. The orange tree is than the apple tree.
a) taller b) tall c) tallest d) more tall
6. Books are than movies.
a) better b) good c) more good d) best
7. My new tablet is than my old one.
a) best b) good c) more good d) better
8. This bag is than that one.
a) cheaper b) most cheap c) more cheap d) cheap
9. Ali is than Mohamed.
a) happiest b) happy c) most happy d) happier
10. Diamond is than gold.
a) more valuable b) valuable c) most valuable d) as valuable
11. This car is than that one.
a) cheapest b) cheap c) most cheap d) cheaper
12. English is than Math.
a) most easy b) easiest c) easier d) easy
13. Chocolate is than ice cream.
a) good b) best c) more good d) better
14. My house is than your house.
a) most big b) big c) biggest d) bigger
15. My dog is than his cat.
a) stronger b) strongest c) as strong d) strong

Language

16. Today is than yesterday.
a) hotter b) hot c) more hot d) hottest
17. This phone is than that one.
a) most new b) newer c) more new d) new
18. The park is than the beach.
a) cleaner b) cleanest c) most clean d) clean
19. The sun is than the moon.
a) brighter b) brightest c) most bright d) bright
20. This chair is than that one.
a) oldest b) older c) more old d) old

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Chocolate is (good) than ice cream.
2. This phone is (expensive) than that one.
3. The book is (interesting) than the story.
4. My dog is (lazy) than his cat.
5. The park is (quiet) than the beach.
6. Gold is (valuable) than diamond.
7. Ali is (happy) than Omar.
8. Winter is (cold) than summer.
9. This test is (hard) than the last one.
10. My new tablet is (bad) than my old one.
11. Copper is (cheap) than gold.
12. The orange tree is (tall) than the apple tree.
13. Ali is (short) than Omar.
14. Books are (boring) than movies.
15. My house is (old) than your house.
16. This car is (valuable) than that car.
17. The sun is (bright) than the moon.
18. Today is (cold) than yesterday.
19. She has (much) books than her sister.
20. This bag is (heavy) than that one.

Reading and Writing Skills

Reading Skills

مهارات القراءة

How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" question.

كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة يقوم الطالب بقراءتها ثم يجيب عن بعض الأسئلة:

أ- سؤالان اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

(تحديد الفكرة العامة في النص - تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص)

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

(١) تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص

- This text is about ".....".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about ".....".

Or: The text talks about ".....".

(٢) تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word "....." has the same meaning as ".....".

Or: The underlined word "....." is the opposite of the word ".....".

Or: The underlined pronoun "....." refers to ".....".

Or: The underlined word "....." means ".....".

ب- توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص

- ثلاثة أسئلة بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية.

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تقديم استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer

- Mention استنتاج

اذكر

- تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص.

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

1 How to write a paragraph: كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

- 1 اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريباً 1 سم.
- 2 ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
- 3 ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة خبرية.
- 4 اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
- 5 ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوع بدايات الجمل.
- 6 استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
- 7 استخدم جمل بسيطة.
- 8 حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

2 How to write a blog: كيف تكتب مدونة

- 1 اكتب تاريخ اليوم في بداية المدونة.
- 2 قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.
- 3 صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .
- 4 صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
- 5 اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / me).
- 6 استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.
- 7 اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (I think that) / (In my opinion).

3 How to write a diary entry: كيف تكتب مذكرة - يوميات

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1) Write the date. | اكتب التاريخ. |
| 2) Start with "Dear Diary". | ابدأ بـ (Dear Diary). |
| 3) Write about how you felt. | اكتب كيف كان شعورك. |
| 4) Use informal language. | استخدم لغة غير رسمية. |
| 5) Use personal pronouns as "I - me" | استخدم ضمائر شخصية مثل (I - me). |
| 6) Describe the (places - events). | صف (الأماكن والأحداث). |

Punctuation Marks

Capital letters

A B C

الحروف الكبيرة

علامات الترقيم

توضع في بداية الجملة / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة

- | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1 She has an apple. | 2 I'm Adam. | 5 English |
| 3 Saturday | 4 October | 8 Egypt |
| 6 Egyptian | 7 Ahmed | |

والضمير (I).

Period (Full Stop)



النقطة

توضع في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Snakes eat small animals. | 2 The desert is hot. |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|

Question Mark



علامة الاستفهام

توضع في نهاية السؤال.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 How can humans live in the desert? | 2 How does swimming help you? |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|

Exclamation Mark



علامة التعجب

توضع في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1 That's cool! | 2 What a pity! |
|----------------|----------------|

Apostrophe



الفاصلة العليا

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 My sister's birthday is on October 17 th . | توضع مع (s) الملكية. |
| 2 He doesn't watch TV at night. | توضع في الاختصارات. |

Comma



الفاصلة السفلى

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 We grow cotton, wheat, and fruit. | توضع عند كتابة قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات. |
| 2 Yes, I love gold rings. | توضع بعد (Yes / No). |
| 3 The ship tried to move, but it couldn't. | توضع قبل (but). |
| 4 I'd like fish, please. | توضع قبل (please) إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة. |
| 5 Please, dear clouds turn right side up. | أو توضع بعدها إذا جاءت في أول الجملة. |



Review on Unit (1)

Vocabulary

The Nile River	نهر النيل	desert	صحراء
water weeds	أعشاب مائية	snakes	ثعابين
insects	حشرات	lizards	سحالي
crocodiles	تماسيح	dangerous	خطير
scary	مخيف	survive	ينجو - يبقى على قيد الحياة
role	دور	protect	يحمي
energy	طاقة	owl	بومة
balance	توازن	crown	تاج
care for	يعتني بـ	shade	ظل
branch	غصن - فرع	selfish	أناني
lentils	عدس	ingredients	مكونات - مقادير
flavor	نكهة - مذاق	tasty	لذيذ

Pronunciation

A consonant cluster

plant	نبات	drink	يشرب
crops	محاصيل	climb	يتسلق
strong	قوي	truck	شاحنة
black	أسود	branch	غصن

Language (Adverbs of Frequency)

always - usually - often - sometimes - rarely - never

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء ما.

e.g. Snakes **never** eat plants.

(Before the main verb)

e.g. Lizards **are sometimes** dangerous.

(After verb to be)

Activities On Unit (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tom had a healthy tree.
a) apple b) orange c) peach d) lemon
2. Tom on the tree.
a) climbed b) played c) jumped d) gave
3. Tom traveled for many years.
a) in b) about c) away d) by
4. When he came back, the tree was
a) strong b) weak c) happy d) healthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile is one of the rivers in the world.
a) longest b) shortest c) smallest d) nicest
2. are strong and dangerous.
a) Camels b) Owls c) Crocodiles d) Fish
3. Small fish in the river eat
a) trees b) insects c) water weeds d) rats
4. Each animal plays an important in the desert.
a) role b) game c) party d) way
5. All animals in the river find food to
a) die b) survive c) sleep d) come
6. The desert is hot and
a) cold b) windy c) dry d) rainy
7. come out at night when it's cooler.
a) Foxes b) Owls c) Elephants d) Camels
8. Insects give lizards
a) water b) drink c) energy d) home
9. Animals help nature stay in
a) balance b) shape c) class d) solar

Units

10. Snakes never water in their bodies.
a) give b) take c) store d) eat
11. The queen wore a shiny gold at the ceremony.
a) shade b) crown c) branch d) sail
12. Omar is so He doesn't want to give his toys to anyone.
a) careful b) old c) good d) selfish
13. The boy could climb the tree's
a) trunk b) leaves c) roots d) flowers
14. Koshari is a tasty meal with many simple
a) parts b) littles c) ingredients d) groups
15. You can add more sauces for more
a) flavor b) smell c) touch d) shape

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Crocodiles - Nile - birds - water weeds

The 1) is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. 2) are strong and dangerous. They hunt large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat 3)

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

lizards - fine - camels - snakes

Sarah : Hello, Laila. How are you?

Laila : Hello, Sarah. I'm 1), thank you.

Sarah : What do 2) eat?

Laila : They eat rats or 3)

Sarah : Oh! Animals help nature stay in balance.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Camels eat to stay strong.
a) plants b) insects c) birds d) lizards
- Animals help stay in balance.
a) rivers b) seas c) nature d) trees

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the text about?

.....

4. Why do some animals hide under rocks?

.....

5. What do insects give lizards?

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Camels (never) eat plants.
- Crocodiles (always are) dangerous.
- Desert animals (usually) find food and water.
- Snakes (always) store water in their bodies.
- We (always are) happy at school.

7 Read and correct the mistake.

1. She never is late for school. (.....)
2. He plays rarely football with his friends. (.....)
3. She goes always to the market on Sundays. (.....)
4. You often are late for class. (.....)
5. The desert is never hot during the day. (.....)

8 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. fish - so - Small - colorful - are - .
.....
2. do - birds -eat - What - ?
.....
3. need - the Nile - We - to - River - protect - .
.....
4. other - can - What - animals - in the - live - desert - ?
.....
5. stay - Camels - plants - eat - to - strong - .
.....
6. are - dangerous - Lizards - sometimes - .
.....
7. animals - Desert - food - rarely - find - .
.....
8. always - Camels - store - bodies - their - water - in - .
.....
9. rested - in the - Tom - shade - a hot - on - day - .
.....
10. is - food - Koshari - Egyptian - a traditional - .
.....

9 Read and match.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. The Nile is one of | a. strong and dangerous. | | |
| 2. Birds eat | b. an important role. | | |
| 3. Crocodiles are | c. the longest rivers in the world. | | |
| 4. Each animal plays | d. small fish and insects. | | |
| 1. () | 2. () | 3. () | 4. () |

Read and match.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. The desert is | a. eat rats or lizards. | | |
| 2. Owls come out | b. those who care for us. | | |
| 3. Snakes often | c. at night. | | |
| 4. We should appreciate | d. hot and dry. | | |
| 1. () | 2. () | 3. () | 4. () |

10 Punctuate the following.

- look at the small fish in the Nile River!
- what do crocodiles eat
- camels live in the desert
- sarah climbed the trunk
- do you like Koshari

11 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Animals in the desert

Guiding elements:

(hot - snakes - camels - role)

.....

Your favorite Egyptian dish

Guiding elements:

(Hawawshi - meat - spices)

.....



Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

heart	قلب	muscle	عضلة	energy	طاقة
lungs	الرئتان	fit	لائق بدنيا	mental health	الصحة العقلية
stressed	متوتر	habits	عادات	vitamins	فيتامينات
soda	صودا (مشروبات غازية)	snack	وجبة خفيفة	healthcare	الرعاية الصحية
diagnose	يشخص	patients	مرضى	in emergencies	في حالات الطوارئ
organs	أعضاء الجسم	fist	قبضة اليد	pump blood	يضخ الدم
paramedic	مسعف	nutrients	مواد مغذية	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
doctor	طبيب	exercise	يمارس تمارين رياضية	hurt	يضر
pharmacist	صيدلي	nurse	ممرضة	oxygen	الأكسجين

Pronunciation

One syllable words

bread	خبز	tree	شجرة	fish	سمكة
run	يجري	jump	يقفز	pot	إناء
hat	قبعة	feed	يطعم	cut	يقطع

Language (Using a / an / some / any)

نستخدم «a» قبل الأسماء المفردة التي تعد وتبدأ بصوت ساكن.

e.g. I eat **a** banana every day.

نستخدم «an» قبل الأسماء المفردة التي تعد وتبدأ بصوت متحرك.

e.g. She eats **an** egg in the morning.

نستخدم «some» مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد في الجمل المثبتة.

e.g. I have **some** apples.

e.g. She drank **some** water.

نستخدم «any» مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد في النفي والاستفهام.

e.g. There aren't **any** apples left.

e.g. Do you have **any** water?

Activities On Unit (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam wants to tell us about his
 a) house b) family c) phone d) habits
2. He used to watch all day.
 a) TV b) the zoo c) the club d) radio
3. He plays football with his friends every
 a) Monday b) Sunday c) Tuesday d) Saturday
4. Now he eats more fruit and
 a) meat b) snacks c) vegetables d) bread

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He is He is healthy and strong because he exercises.
 a) fit b) fat c) weak d) bad
2. are organs in our chest that help us breathe.
 a) Lungs b) Hearts c) Heads d) Ears
3. are parts of the body that help you move.
 a) Hands b) Lungs c) Muscles d) Legs
4. Waking up early every day is my everyday
 a) body b) habit c) soda d) health
5. Your is your hand when it is tightly closed.
 a) test b) oxygen c) organ d) fist
6. Blood are the tubes that carry blood through the body.
 a) vases b) vessels c) fists d) sizes
7. The is about the size of your fist.
 a) leg b) skin c) lung d) heart
8. The heart blood around your body.
 a) plans b) keeps c) pumps d) shares
9. use their skills to check patients.
 a) Doctors b) Farmers c) Teachers d) Bakers

Units

10. give support and care for patients.
a) Farmers b) Vets c) Cleaners d) Nurses
11. Pharmacists make sure patients receive the correct
a) water b) meat c) medicine d) bread
12. respond quickly in emergencies.
a) Teachers b) Paramedics c) Workers d) Bakers
13. is when you feel unhappy or tired.
a) Pleased b) Fit c) Stressed d) Active
14. health is how you feel and think.
a) Mental b) Muscle c) Smart d) Metal
15. Healthcare workers like doctors and nurses are real-life
a) heroes b) sleepers c) posters d) officers

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

body - soda - healthy - football

Adam plays 1) with his friends every Saturday. He drinks a lot of water instead of 2) He eats fruit and vegetables to get vitamins. He wants to keep 3) because good habits are important for his body and mind.

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

blood - heart - organ - fist

- Hamza : What's the most important organ in our body?
- Adham : It's the 1).....
- Hamza : What size is it?
- Adham : It's about the size of your 2).....
- Hamza : What's the job of the heart?
- Adham : It pumps 3)..... to all parts of the body.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

The heart is a very important organ in our body. It pumps blood around our body. The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us alive. Too much stress can hurt your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy. You can take care of your heart by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking a lot of water. Also, exercise helps your heart pump better and keeps you from getting sick.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a) heart b) muscle c) stress d) exercise
- Exercise keeps you from getting
a) good b) fine c) sick d) healthy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How can you take care of your heart?

.....

4. What can stress cause to us?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Ali eats (an) banana every day.
- She drank (any) water.
- We have (a) apples.
- There (is) any milk in the fridge.
- Do you have (some) juice?

7 Read and correct the mistake.

1. I drank an apple juice. (.....)
2. We don't have some fruit. (.....)
3. Mom bought an bottle of water. (.....)
4. We will buy any grapes for the picnic. (.....)
5. Do you eat some fish for lunch? (.....)

8 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. strong - you - How - make - football - does - ?
.....
2. you - exercise - some - eating - Try - fruits - before - .
.....
3. on - weekends - I - late - up - wake - .
.....
4. you - Have - changed - habits - your - ?
.....
5. and - Fruits - vegetables - vitamins - give us - .
.....
6. at - home - don't - We - have - any - food - .
.....
7. in - our body - The heart - organ - an amazing - is - .
.....
8. heart - your - Too - can - hurt - stress - much - .
.....
9. role - play - Pharmacists - a very - important - .
.....
10. healthier - live - Healthcare - us - help - workers - .
.....

9 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Stressed means | a. a lot of water. |
| 2. Why is exercising | b. around the clock. |
| 3. Adam drinks | c. feeling unhappy or tired. |
| 4. Nurses work | d. regularly important? |
1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

- Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. What do doctors do | a. with my friends. |
| 2. Oxygen is the gas | b. to help patients? |
| 3. We don't have | c. we breathe. |
| 4. I play football | d. any food at home. |
1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

10 Punctuate the following.

1. how do doctors help us
2. there isn't any milk in the fridge
3. I d like to have some tea
4. water is good for the heart
5. do you have any apples

11 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Sport

Guiding elements:

(play sport – stay strong – exercise)

.....

.....

Healthcare workers

Guiding elements:

(doctors – nurses – paramedics)

.....

.....



Review on Unit (3)

Vocabulary

thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	stuck	عالق	pond	بركة مياه
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	weather	الطقس	well	بئر
flood	فيضان	rich soil	تربة غنية (خصبة)	flies	ذباب
wildfire	حرائق الغابات	breathe	يتنفس	safely	بأمان
heat wave	موجة حارة	smart	ذكي	leap	يقفز
drought	جفاف	mud bricks	طوب لين	upside down	رأساً على عقب
planet	كوكب	insects	حشرات	flip	يتقلب
spread	ينتشر	deep	عميق	clap	يصفق
news	أخبار	whisper	يهمس	kindness	عطف

Pronunciation

Long /e/		Short /o/		Long /o/	
read	يقرأ	flood	فيضانات	goat	ماعز
hear	يسمع	blood	دم	boat	قارب

Language (The Past Simple Tense)

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

e.g. I **played** tennis **yesterday**.

e.g. I **went** to the club **last week**.

Negative

Subject (فاعل) + **did not (didn't)** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. I **didn't play** tennis **yesterday**.

e.g. I **didn't go** to the club **last week**.

Question:

Did + **subject** (فاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + **.....?**

e.g. **Did** you **sail** across the lake?

Q.W + **did** + **subject** (فاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + **.....?**

e.g. **Where did** you **go yesterday**?

Activities On Unit (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- There was a in our city.
a) flood b) drought c) thunderstorm d) sandstorm
- The water covered the
a) hospitals b) streets c) clubs d) banks
- Many got stuck.
a) boats b) buses c) cars d) trains
- My had to stay with us for a few days.
a) sister b) brother c) aunt d) uncle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A lot of trees burned down in a
a) wildfire b) drought c) flood d) sand
- During a, the weather is very hot.
a) heat wave b) flood c) winter d) rain
- A can prevent farmers from growing food.
a) thunderstorm b) drought c) water d) soil
- I was in my car during the flood. I couldn't move.
a) free b) stuck c) fine d) nice
- The wildfire quickly in the forest.
a) walked b) ate c) spread d) ran
- I heard on the that there was a bad storm in the village.
a) storm b) sand c) house d) news
- Medhat's house was after the storm hit it.
a) damaged b) fixed c) mended d) played
- To save our, we must keep it clean.
a) match b) plane c) planet d) rock
- The floods brought water and to the land.
a) sand b) rich soil c) rocks d) heat

Units

10. Droughts made the Nile's water
a) soil b) spread c) high d) low
11. The houses protected the Ancient Egyptians from sandstorms.
a) mud bricks b) wood c) pyramids d) metal
12. The Ancient Egyptians found smart ways to
a) breathe b) damage c) survive d) grow
13. A is an area of water usually smaller than a lake.
a) pond b) well c) fly d) leap
14. A is a deep hole dug in the ground to find water.
a) leap b) wall c) will d) well
15. are small insects with two thin, small wings.
a) Goats b) Frogs c) Flies d) Cups

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

window - sunshine - upside - strange

Once upon a time, in a cozy little house, lived a girl named Lily. One sunny morning, Lily looked out her 1) and saw something strange. Big, fluffy clouds were floating 2) down! "Oh no!" she cried. "How will my flowers get 3) if the clouds are upside down?"

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

Pyramids - photos - visit - weather

- Tom : What's the weather like in Egypt?
- Ali : It's fine all around the year.
- Tom : What places can I 1) here?
- Ali : You can visit the 2)
- Tom : What can I do at the Pyramids?
- Ali : You can take 3) and ride a horse.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in a pond any longer. So, they decided to look for a new home. After a long time, they saw a deep well. One of the frogs said, "This well looks like a great place for us to live! But the other frog thought it wasn't safe. So, they searched for a better home.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about two
a) cats b) dogs c) frogs d) snakes
- The well is
a) old b) nice c) deep d) long

B) Answer the following questions.

- What did the two frogs decide at first?
.....

- What did the other frog think about the well?
.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The pond (start) to dry up last week.
- They (reads) two books last month.
- (Were) you ride a bike yesterday?
- We (play) tennis two days ago.
- What (is) the weather like yesterday?

7 Read and correct the mistake.

1. Malik didn't watched TV last night. (.....)
2. She see a nice animal yesterday. (.....)
3. They are at the club a week ago. (.....)
4. Do you go to the cinema last week? (.....)
5. Was there sandstorms in the past? (.....)

8 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. city - the flood - you - Did - hear - about - in our - ?
.....
2. learn - Let's - more - planet - our - about - .
.....
3. the land - brought - The weather - soil - rich - to - .
.....
4. modern - The Ancient - machines - have - didn't - Egyptians - .
.....
5. in - sandstorms - there - Were - the past - ?
.....
6. frogs - The two - the fields - through - leaped - .
.....
7. read - We - night - last - books - two - .
.....
8. with - Lily - joy - hands - her - clapped - .
.....
9. lightning - of - afraid - are - The children - .
.....
10. year - River - The Nile - flooded - every - .
.....

9 Read and match.

1. I was so excited
2. Did the teacher
3. We must keep
4. The Nile River

- a. flooded every year.
- b. our planet clean.
- c. give us homework?
- d. about my trip.

1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

- Read and match.

1. The boat sailed
2. Lily clapped
3. A pond is
4. I didn't go

- a. to school yesterday.
- b. across the lake.
- c. her hands.
- d. an area of water.

1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

10 Punctuate the following.

1. The Nile's water became low
2. He didn't go to the club
3. was he happy yesterday
4. Ancient Egyptian farmers grew crops
5. Lily clapped her hands with joy

11 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Weather wonders

Guiding elements:

(flood - sandstorm - drought)

The weather in Alexandria

Guiding elements:

(summer - hot - winter - cold)



Review on Unit (4)

Vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	quiet	هادئ
coffee shop	مقهى	reduce	يقلل
bakery	مخبز	crowding	ازدحام
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	energy	طاقة
theme park	ملاهي	Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية
village	قرية	smart	ذكي
fields	حقول	government	حكومة
main square	الساحة الرئيسية	steel	فولاذ / صلب
barn	حظيرة	design	يصمم / تصميم
community centre	مركز مجتمعي	peaceful	هادئ
cottage	بيت ريفي	technology	تكنولوجيا

Pronunciation

/dge/	/tch/	/igh/
bridge	match	bright
fridge	watch	flight

Language (Prepositions of time)

at

نستخدم «at» مع أوقات الساعة - أوقات الوجبات - عبارات الوقت

at 6 a.m

في السادسة صباحاً

at lunchtime

في وقت الغداء

at night

ليلاً

in

نستخدم «in» مع (أجزاء اليوم - فصول السنة - السنوات - الشهور)

in summer

في الصيف

in the afternoon

في فترة بعد الظهر

in 2020

في عام ٢٠٢٠

in December

في شهر ديسمبر

on

نستخدم «on» مع (الأيام - التواريخ)

on Saturday

في يوم السبت

on June 8th

في الثامن من يونيو

Activities On Unit (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adel likes going to the with his friends.
a) club b) bakery c) supermarket d) restaurant
2. Tamer goes to the supermarket with his
a) friends b) family c) teacher d) doctor
3. Adel enjoys coffee shops for coffee and
a) bread b) cheese c) meat d) cake
4. Tamer and Adel plan to visit the
a) hospital b) museum c) bakery d) club

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We usually go on rides at the
a) bakery b) theme park c) supermarket d) coffee shop
2. If you want to buy groceries, go to the
a) club b) supermarket c) hospital d) bakery
3. A is a fun place to play sports.
a) club b) restaurant c) coffee shop d) hospital
4. People go to the to eat dinner.
a) hospital b) bakery c) supermarket d) restaurant
5. You can buy bread and cakes at the
a) club b) supermarket c) bakery d) hospital
6. People relax and drink coffee at the
a) hospital b) coffee shop c) club d) bakery
7. Farmers grow food in their
a) houses b) fields c) boxes d) waters
8. Farmers keep animals in
a) bridges b) rivers c) barns d) oceans
9. The word "peaceful" is the synonym of
a) dirty b) huge c) calm d) noisy

Units

10. The New Administrative city crowding in Cairo.
a) increased b) reduces c) builds d) grows
11. The Administrative city is designed to be
a) ugly b) ancient c) smart d) terrible
12. The Iconic is the tallest building in Africa.
a) Tower b) Power c) River d) Sea
13. Technology is used to manage roads.
a) Old b) Ancient c) Bad d) Modern
14. Builders often use strong to build towers.
a) wood b) paper c) steel d) clay
15. Scientists do to find new cures.
a) research b) city c) peaceful d) stories

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

square - meeting - animals - cottages

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy 1) surrounded by green fields and fresh air. There is a market in the main 2) where people buy and sell fresh fruit and vegetables. Farmers keep their 3) in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

cottages - village - friendly - people

- Ali : Where did you go last week?
- Samy : I went to the 1)
- Ali : How are people there?
- Samy : They are 2) and nice.
- Ali : Where do they live?
- Samy : They live in small 3)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is building new cities to make life better for its people. One of these is the New Administrative Capital, which is 45 km east of Cairo. It uses modern technology to control roads, water, and energy. The city has green parks, government offices, and important buildings. It also has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower, which is 385 meters high with 80 floors. People can find good jobs here and enjoy a peaceful life. Many families are living in this smart and clean city.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The New Administrative Capital is located of Cairo.
a) east b) west c) north d) south
2. The opposite of the underlined word "peaceful" is
a) calm b) quiet c) small d) noisy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why is Egypt building new cities?
.....

4. What does the city use modern technology for?
.....

5. How many floors does the Iconic Tower have?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I get up (on) 6:30 a.m.
2. She was born (at) February.
3. The party is (in) Monday.
4. Let's meet (on) lunchtime.
5. We often play tennis (at) Sunday.

7 Read and correct the mistake.

1. My birthday is in August 5th. (.....)
2. At December the weather is cold. (.....)
3. I go to the cinema at Wednesdays. (.....)
4. He travelled to Aswan on 2015. (.....)
5. Farmers grow cotton at summer. (.....)

8 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. technology - We - everywhere - use - modern - .
.....
2. finish - story - the - How - does - ?
.....
3. tall - Iconic - How - Tower - is - the - ?
.....
4. born - I - March - was - in - .
.....
5. place - is - favourite - your - What - ?
.....
6. is - in - a - Life - peaceful - village - .
.....
7. keep - barns - in - Farmers - animals - .
.....
8. cities - everywhere - Egypt - new - builds - .
.....
9. lives - a - village - in - small - He - .
.....
10. the - I - to - club - going - like - .
.....

9 Read and match.

1. We go to the club
2. Where do they grow food?
3. Life in a village
4. When do you get up?

- a. In their fields.
- b. I get up at 6 a.m.
- c. to play football.
- d. is peaceful and simple.

1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

- Read and match.

1. The main square is
2. Where do we buy fruit?
3. Children have fun
4. People use gold

- a. at the community centre.
- b. the busiest part in the village.
- c. to make jewelry.
- d. At the market.

1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

10 Punctuate the following.

1. i want to get some bread
2. what does Adel do at the club
3. Let s go to the theme park
4. we go to the restaurant for dinner
5. he lives in a cozy cottage

.....

11 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Life in my village

Guiding elements:

(fields - cottage - barns)

.....

Places in your community

Guiding elements:

(theme parks - supermarket - club)

.....



Review on Unit (5)

Vocabulary

natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	wheat	قمح
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	cotton	قطن
water	ماء	wise / wisely	حكيم - بحكمة
soil	تربة زراعية	dry	جاف
minerals	معادن	crops	محاصيل
tear	دمعة	secrets	أسرار
wind	رياح	copper	نحاس
fertile	خصب	diamond	الماس
electricity	كهرباء	valuable	قيم (ذو قيمة)
nature	الطبيعة	pipes	مواسير
natural gas	غاز طبيعي	tools	أدوات
iron	حديد	miners	عمال المناجم
gold	ذهب	path	ممر / طريق

Pronunciation

mis-	bi-	dis-
spell → mis spell	cycle → bi cycle	likes → dis likes
place → mis place		

Language (Comparative Adjectives)

Form التكوين

adj. (صفة قصيرة) **+** **er** **+** **than**

Example: Gold is **cheaper** **than** diamond.

Amira is **happier** **than** Talia.

more / less **+** **than** (صفة طويلة)

Example: Diamond is **more** valuable **than** gold.

Activities On Unit (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Gold sleeps deep the earth.
a) on b) out c) of d) under
- search for gold.
a) Animals b) Plants c) People d) Stars
- Gold is soft and
a) clever b) smart c) ugly d) beautiful
- Gold is
a) valuable b) value c) cheap d) black

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- is a soft, white plant that is used to make fabric.
a) Carrot b) Tomato c) Cotton d) Apple
- A land with rich soil to grow food is called
a) electricity b) minerals c) fertile d) cotton
- Natural resources are things we find in
a) picture b) nature c) sky d) sea
- We cotton, wheat and many kinds of fruit.
a) sit b) stand c) drink d) grow
- Egypt's deserts contain gold and
a) iron b) sugar c) honey d) meat
- The Nile River is the most important resource in Egypt.
a) wind b) water c) sand d) oil
- Egypt's land along the Nile is , so we can grow food.
a) fertile b) poor c) dry d) wise
- Natural resources like minerals help our country
a) sleep b) play c) write d) grow
- Egypt's deserts contain many , such as gold and iron.
a) crops b) companies c) minerals d) secrets

Units

10. A is a machine often used for digging.
a) digger b) bigger c) larger d) smaller
11. "Give " means to stop trying.
a) off b) up c) down d) on
12. " " means to put things onto ships.
a) Flood b) Load c) Tide d) Ride
13. We find minerals
a) in sky b) under walls c) above the table d) underground
14. Metals and are non-renewable.
a) water b) minerals c) wind d) sun
15. A is a route or way for traveling.
a) path b) bathe c) phase d) breath

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Copper – mineral resources – non-renewable - wise

Minerals are precious materials that we find underground. Gold, diamond, copper, and iron are all 1) Each one is special. Gold is soft and shiny, perfect for jewelry. 2) is great for wires. Iron is strong and used to make cars and ships. Metals and minerals are 3), so we must use them wisely.

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

diamond - bad - precious - underground

- Anas : What do you know about minerals, Seif?
- Seif : They are 1) materials.
- Anas : Where can we find them?
- Seif : We can find them 2)
- Anas : Can you name some minerals?
- Seif : Yes. Gold, 3) , copper, and iron.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make important things. Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to shape. People use it for coins and jewelry. I love gold rings! Diamond is a rare mineral—even more valuable than gold!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. We find minerals the earth.
a) over b) about c) under d) with
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**easy**" is
a) difficult b) tall c) strong d) thin

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is easy to shape?

.....

4. What's more valuable than gold?

.....

5. Mention some mineral resources.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Anas is (**old**) than Seif.
2. Hoor is (**many**) beautiful than Mena.
3. Horses are (**fast**) than camels.
4. Lions are (**much**) dangerous than dogs.
5. Fruits are (**healthy**) than sweets.

7 Read and correct the mistake.

1. The train is much comfortable than a bus. (.....)
2. Gold is cheap than diamond. (.....)
3. The elephant is big than the lion. (.....)
4. The T-shirt is large than the shirt. (.....)
5. Hoor is happy than Safia. (.....)

8 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. resources - will - about - We - talk - natural - .

2. grow - Egypt - What - in - we - do - ?

3. find - Where - in - can - gold - we - Egypt - ?

4. minerals - deserts - Egypt's - contain - many - .

5. grow - resources - country - Natural - our - help - .

6. to make - things - Minerals - used - important - are - .

7. use - mineral - We - wisely - must - resources - .

8. big ship - stuck - did - Why - the - get - ?

9. learn - the story - What - we - from - do - ?

10. bicycle - My - red - old - was - and - .

9 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Under the earth, | a. of years to form. |
| 2. Minerals take millions | b. us grow food. |
| 3. We find natural | c. we find mineral resources. |
| 4. The fertile land helps | d. resources in nature. |
1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

- Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Gold is used to | a. seen a crystal? |
| 2. Have you ever | b. playing football. |
| 3. I watched the big ship | c. make jewelry and coins. |
| 4. He dislikes | d. come close to the shore. |
1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

10 Punctuate the following.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. gold is valuable | |
| 2. where can we find minerals | |
| 3. the digger is smaller than the ship | |
| 4. It s my first time to wear jewelry | |
| 5. we get light from the sun | |

11 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Natural resources

Guiding elements:

(nature - water - natural gas - fuel)

.....

Minerals

Guiding elements:

(gold - diamond - copper - iron)

.....

Glossary of Words and Phrases

Category	Word	Definition
Nature	trunk	جذع the main, thick part of a tree
	stump	جذع مقطوع the bottom part of a tree that stays in the ground after cutting
	branch	فرع a part that grows from a tree's trunk where leaves grow
	shade	ظل a dark shadow created when sunlight is blocked
	crown	تاج a special hat worn by kings or queens
	leaf	ورقة شجر a flat, green part of a plant or tree
	pond	بركة a body of water, usually smaller than a lake
	well	بئر a deep hole dug in the ground to find water
	flies	ذباب small insects with thin wings
	leaped	قفز jumped high and far in one movement
Health	peaceful	هادئ calm and quiet
	safely	بأمان protected from danger
	fit	لائق بدنياً being healthy and strong through exercise
	muscles	عضلات the part in your body that helps you move
	lungs	رئتان organs in your chest that help you breathe
	stressed	متوتر feeling unhappy or tired
	mental health	الصحة النفسية how you feel and think
	heart	القلب organ that pumps blood in the body
Food and Culture	blood vessels	أوعية دموية tubes that carry blood
	koshari	كشري a tasty Egyptian meal made with rice, pasta, lentils, and sauces
	recipe	وصفة طهي a set of steps for preparing food
	ingredients	مكونات the items used to make a dish
	onions	بصل a vegetable often used in cooking, especially for crispy topping in Koshari
	pasta	مكرونة a type of food made from flour and water, usually shaped into noodles
	lentils	عدس small legumes used in many Egyptian dishes
	chickpeas	حمص a round, beige legume used in Koshari and other meals
	basbousa	بسبوسة a traditional Middle Eastern dessert made from semolina and syrup

Community	restaurant	مطعم	a place where people go to eat food
	supermarket	سوبرماركت	a large store where people buy groceries
	club	نادي	a place where people play sports and socialize
	bakery	مخبز	a place where bread, cakes, and pastries are made
	coffee shop	مقهى	a place to relax and drink coffee
	theme park	ملاهي	a place with rides and games for fun
Natural Resources	village	قرية	a small community or group of houses
	minerals	معادن	natural substances found in the earth
	cotton	قطن	a soft fiber used to make cloth
	fossil fuel	وقود حفري	fuels like coal and oil formed from ancient remains
	soil	تربة	the top layer of earth in which plants grow
	electricity	كهرباء	power used to run machines and lights
	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	light from the sun, important for life
Weather	wind	رياح	moving air that can be used for energy
	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	a severe wind that carries sand through the air
	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	a storm with lightning and thunder
	flood	فيضان	a large amount of water covering dry land
	drought	جفاف	a long time without rain
	wildfire	حريق غابات	a fire that spreads quickly in forests
	heatwave	موجة حارة	a period of extremely hot weather
Project Types	khamasin	رياح الخماسين	a hot, dry, and dusty wind in Egypt
	flyer	منشور إعلاني	a short printed paper used to give information or advertise something
	menu	قائمة طعام	a list of food and drinks you can choose from a restaurant or coffee shop
	poster	ملصق	a large printed paper used to display information visually
	collage	لوحة فنية مجمعة	a piece of art made by sticking pictures together

Literature	story	قصة	a narrative with characters, setting, and events
	moral	العبرة - الدرس المستفاد	the lesson or message in a story
	characters	شخصيات	the people or animals in a story
	setting	الزمن والمكان	the time and place where a story happens
	plot	الحبكة	the sequence of events in a story
	climax	ذروة الأحداث	the most exciting part of the story
	ending	النهاية	how the story finishes
	narrative	السرد / قصصي	a type of writing that tells a story
General	important	مهم	something that matters a lot
	role	دور	the part someone or something plays in a situation
	help	مساعدة	to make something easier or better
	protect	يحمي	to keep something safe from harm
Writing Types	paragraph	فقرة	a group of sentences about one idea
	first-person narrative		writing from the "I" perspective (e.g., Ali's story about his health habits)
	object-perspective narrative	السرد بضمير المتكلم	writing from the point of view of a nonliving thing (e.g., mining materials)
	fiction story	قصة خيالية	imaginative writing with characters, setting, plot, climax, and ending
	non-fiction text	نص واقعي	real information about people, jobs, or places (e.g., healthcare workers)
	descriptive paragraph	فقرة وصفية	describing people, places, or ideas using adjectives and details
	research notes		brief facts gathered for writing about a city or topic
	story summary	ملحظات بحثية	retelling the story in brief with beginning, middle, and end
		ملخص القصة	

Exam (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Nile is one of the longest in the world.
a) seas b) rivers c) lakes d) oceans
2. Crocodiles are strong and
a) happy b) safe c) kind d) dangerous
3. Crocodiles large animals in or near the water.
a) play b) drink c) swim d) hunt
4. Small fish in the river eat water
a) weeds b) pots c) stars d) air

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The queen wore shiny gold at the ceremony.
a) shade b) branch c) crown d) sail
2. A lot of trees burned down in a
a) wildfire b) drought c) flood d) water
3. Egypt's deserts contain many such as gold and iron.
a) crops b) companies c) minerals d) secrets

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

square - meeting - animals - cottages

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy 1) surrounded by green fields and fresh air. There is a market in the main 2) where people buy and sell fresh fruit and vegetables. Farmers keep their 3) in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make important things. Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to shape. People use it for coins and jewelry. I love gold rings! Diamond is a rare mineral – even more valuable than gold! Copper is a strong metal which we use for electrical wires, pipes, and tools.

Exams

It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert. Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about
a) animals b) minerals c) birds d) crops
- Diamond is a mineral.
a) bad b) rare c) common d) dirty

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where does Egypt get most of its copper and gold?
- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
- What does iron help make?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- to - peas - green - I - eat - like - .
.....

- food - grow - do - farmers - Where - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- They (visit) the zoo last weekend.
- Gold is (cheap) than diamond.

7 Punctuate the following.

- adam plays football with his friends
- what sport do you want to play

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Healthcare heroes

Guiding elements:

(doctors - diagnose - paramedics)

.....

.....

.....

Exam (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Koshari is a tasty Egyptian
a) drink b) fruit c) meal d) sport
2. First, you need to cook in a pot with water.
a) rice b) pasta c) onions d) garlic
3. Boil in water.
a) chickpeas b) lentils c) tomatoes d) onions
4. For the red sauce, fry some chopped in oil.
a) garlic b) rice c) pasta d) chickpeas

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Lungs are the organs in your chest that help you
a) think b) move c) breathe d) eat
2. The floods brought water and to the land.
a) sand b) rocks c) rich soil d) heat
3. Gold and copper are valuable mineral
a) animals b) foods c) resources d) plants

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

selfish - strong - apples - weak

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom 1)
and Tom played on it. Tom traveled away, and when he came back, the
tree was 2) So he decided to take care of the tree. The
tree grew 3) again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt builds new cities almost everywhere. My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital, 45 km east of Cairo. It's a **new** city that helps reduce crowding in Cairo. The city is designed to be very smart. Modern technology is used to manage roads, water, energy, and almost everything. The city has green areas everywhere.

Exams

It has also government offices and important buildings. The city where I live has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower, and a new airport!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The New Administrative Capital is located of Cairo.
a) south b) east c) north d) west
2. The tallest building in Africa is the Tower.
a) Eiffel b) Iconic c) Green d) Blue

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is modern technology used to?
4. What is the opposite of the underlined word "new"?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. two - last - We - books - read - week - .
.....

2. What - grow - Egypt - we - in - do - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Sharks (always) eat plants.
2. I didn't buy (some) toys today.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. he never sleeps early
2. she was born in august.

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

The weather in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(flood - rich soil - droughts)

Exam (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The heart is a very strong
a) lung b) muscle c) brain d) liver
2. The heart blood all around the body.
a) stops b) builds c) pumps d) grows
3. carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell.
a) Brain b) Lung c) Sand d) Blood
4. Exercise makes the heart
a) taller b) stronger c) weaker d) shorter

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Snakes often eat small animals like or lizards.
a) rats b) hippos c) camels d) lions
2. Extreme weather can homes and crops.
a) help b) damage c) live d) stay
3. The is a fun place to play sports.
a) bakery b) restaurant c) supermarket d) club

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

favorite - noisy - steel - peaceful

The Iconic Tower is 385 meters high and has 80 floors. It is made of strong glass and 1) From the top, I can see the whole city! People here can find great jobs and have a 2) life. It is my 3) city in Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Koshari is a popular Egyptian food made with rice, lentils, pasta, and chickpeas. First, cook rice and boil lentils. Then, prepare pasta in another pot. For the red sauce, fry chopped garlic in oil, add tomato sauce, vinegar, and spices. Next, fry sliced onions in oil until they are crispy. After that, put rice in a bowl, add lentils, pasta, and chickpeas.

Finally, pour the sauce and add crispy onions on top. Koshari is served with spicy tomato sauce and Dakka sauce, which has garlic and vinegar. It is a delicious and traditional Egyptian meal.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about
 a) rice b) pasta c) koshari d) water
- For the red sauce, fry chopped garlic in
 a) oil b) water c) gas d) air

B) Answer the following questions.

- How is the red sauce for Koshari prepared?
- What is added on top of Koshari before serving?
- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- hot - The - desert - dry - is - and - .

- the - was - pond - Where - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- There is (any) milk in the fridge.
- Let's meet (in) 3 p.m.

7 Punctuate the following.

- when were the Pyramids built
- i travel to aswan in february

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Guiding elements:

Floods

(flood - rich soil - damage)

.....

.....

.....

Exam (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Nile River brings large water and rich
a) sand b) soil c) wind d) bricks
2. Floods happen every
a) week b) month c) year d) day
3. Egyptians built to control water.
a) canals b) houses c) farms d) roads
4. They used simple
a) tools b) cars c) machines d) winds

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Small fish eat water
a) sharks b) weeds c) crocodiles d) lions
2. Medhat's house was after the storm hit it.
a) clean b) safe c) damaged d) protected
3. You can buy bread and cakes at the
a) club b) hospital c) theme park d) bakery

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

desert – sky – energy – lizards

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or 1) Camels live in the 2), too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them 3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The heart is the body's super pump. It sends blood to all parts of the body. Blood brings oxygen and nutrients to cells and removes carbon dioxide. The heart beats non-stop to keep us alive. To take care of your heart, eat healthy meals, drink water, sleep well, and exercise. Stress can hurt the heart, so it's important to stay calm and happy. A strong heart keeps you healthy and full of energy every day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. brings oxygen and nutrients to cells.
a) Gas b) Blood c) Bill d) Sugar
2. A heart keeps you healthy and full of energy.
a) strong b) weak c) short d) damaged

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. How can you take care of your heart?
5. Why is it important to stay calm and happy?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. going - shop - I - to - coffee - like - the - .
.....

2. When - to - move - Alexandria - you - did - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I (am) excited about my trip two days ago.
2. The party is (in) Friday.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. the wedding party is in november.
2. what is the moral of the story

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Your favorite Egyptian food

Guiding elements:

(Koshari - Lentils - Spices)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Life in a village is peaceful and
a) difficult b) hard c) simple d) noisy
2. People live in cozy
a) cottages b) villas c) seas d) caves
3. There is a market in the main
a) river b) lake c) beach d) square
4. Farmers keep their animals in
a) cafés b) barns c) supermarkets d) bakeries

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. are the organs in your chest that help you breathe.
a) Lungs b) Heart c) Ears d) Eyes
2. The systems brought water to crops in Ancient Egypt.
a) mud brick b) sandstorm c) irrigation d) wind
3. fuel is used to generate electricity.
a) Wind b) solar c) Fossil d) water

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

deep - well - home - sky

Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in a pond any longer. So, they decided to look for a new 1) After a long time, they saw a 2) well. One of the frogs said, "This 3) looks like a great place for us to live!" But the other frog thought it wasn't safe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Mineral resources like gold, iron, and copper are found under the earth. People use these minerals to make things we need every day, such as buildings and cars. Some minerals, like diamonds, are shiny and used to make jewelry. Others, like copper, help electricity flow. These resources are very important, but they take a long time to form, so we must use them wisely. Recycling and preserving nature help protect our mineral resources for the future.

Exams

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Diamond is shiny and used in
a) electricity b) pencils c) jewelry d) buildings
2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to
a) jewelry b) buildings c) resources d) sports

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the text mainly talk about?
4. How do people use mineral resources in daily life?
5. Why should we use mineral resources wisely?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. the - covered - heavy - The - roads - flood - .
.....

2. play - do - football Where - you - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The book is (**much**) interesting than the movie.
2. There aren't (**some**) apples left.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. she doesn't sleep early.
2. is it important to play sports

8 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Places in your neighborhood

Guiding elements:

(club - supermarket - restaurant)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Healthcare workers are real-life
a) heroes b) players c) singers d) swimmers
- Doctors use their knowledge to illnesses.
a) help b) treat c) grow d) protect
- Pharmacists give medicine and
a) advice b) toys c) clothes d) book
- Nurses work day and night to care for
a) healthy b) fish c) animals d) patients

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We sat under the tree to rest in the on a hot day.
a) crown b) sail c) shade d) branch
- Children like to play sports at the
a) bakery b) supermarket c) restaurant d) club
- The city is very It uses technology everywhere.
a) smart b) old c) ancient d) ugly

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

rice - prepare - gas - oil

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple ingredients in one bowl. First, you need to cook 1) in a pot with water. In another pot, 2) small pasta. Then, boil lentils in water. For the red sauce, fry some chopped garlic in 3), add tomato sauce, vinegar, and some spices.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Healthcare heroes keep us healthy and safe. They teach us to eat healthy meals, stay active, and avoid harmful habits. Doctors treat diseases, nurses give care, pharmacists provide medicine, and paramedics help in emergencies. They work hard every day. We should thank them for their efforts.

Exams

These heroes are very important in our lives. They protect us from illnesses and help us live better. By respecting them and showing kindness, we can support their work and health. Healthcare workers are our everyday heroes.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Healthcare heroes teach us to eat meals.
a) harmful b) unhealthy c) healthy d) spicy
- Nurses give to patients.
a) care b) toys c) clothes d) books

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?
- What do pharmacists provide to patients?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- sleeps - He - early - never - .
.....

- of - Jewelry - gold - is - made - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Copper is (**valuable**) than diamond.
- She drank (**any**) water.

7 Punctuate the following.

- how do we get mineral resources
- i go to the club on fridays.

8 Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Guiding elements:

Your favorite Egyptian dish

(koshari - rice - pasta - garlic)

Exam (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Under the earth, we find precious resources.
a) fish b) mineral c) solar d) gas
- is soft, shiny, and easy to shape.
a) Gold b) Metal c) Iron d) Wood
- People use gold for coins and
a) clothes b) paper c) wood d) jewelry
- is a rare mineral-even more valuable than gold.
a) Silver b) Wood c) Diamond d) Coal

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Lizards eat to get energy.
a) honey b) insects c) rats d) carrots
- I go to the to eat dinner.
a) hospital b) bakery c) supermarket d) restaurant
- Farmers plant food in the
a) main square b) barn c) cottage d) field

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

severe - storms - damage - happy

Extreme weather is different and much stronger than normal weather. It includes strong 1), harsh heat waves, blinding sandstorms, 2), floods, long droughts, and so much more. These types of weather can cause 3) to homes and crops.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give **them** energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Snakes often eat small animals, like or lizards.
a) rats b) hippos c) camels d) lions
- Each animal in the desert has an role to play.
a) simple b) easy c) important d) hard

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why do camels eat plants?
- What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to?
- What is the main idea of the text?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- night - What - like - is - at - the village - ?
.....

- busy - shop - is - The - very - coffee - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I like to relax (**at**) the evening.
- Why didn't you (**went**) to school yesterday?

7 Punctuate the following.

- adel eats oranges every day
- which place do you like most

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

The heart

Guiding elements:

(organ - pump - nutrients)

Exam (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tom had a healthy tree.
a) orange b) banana c) mango d) apple
2. When Tom came back, the tree was
a) big b) huge c) weak d) happy
3. Tom knew he was
a) selfish b) clever c) good d) right
4. The tree grew again.
a) weak b) strong c) bad d) wrong

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fruits and vegetables give us important
a) vitamins b) soda c) gas d) coal
2. Droughts made the Nile's water
a) soil b) spread c) high d) low
3. fuel is used to generate electricity.
a) Wind b) Solar c) Fossil d) Water

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Copper - mineral resources - non-renewable - ships

Minerals are precious materials that we find underground. Gold, diamond, copper, and iron are all 1) Each one is special. Gold is soft and shiny, perfect for jewelry. 2) is great for wires. Iron is strong and used to make cars and 3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egypt had many weather challenges. Floods brought rich soil, but also damaged farms. Droughts happened when there was not enough rain, and the land became dry. Egyptians made irrigation systems to bring water to the farms. Sandstorms had strong, hot wind and lots of sand. People stayed inside to stay safe. They built homes with thick mud bricks. Egyptians worked hard, used tools, and found smart ways to live.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Droughts happened when there was not enough
a) sand b) soil c) rain d) wind
- Sandstorms had strong, hot wind with
a) water b) soil c) sand d) rain

B) Answer the following questions.

- How did Egyptians solve the problem of droughts?
- What did people do to stay safe during sandstorms?
- What is the main idea of the text?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- yesterday - did - What - eat - she - ?
.....

- all - used - watch - I - to - TV - day - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Salma was born (on) 2014.
- Books are (good) than movies.

7 Punctuate the following.

- adam s family lives in Cairo.
- how do you go to school

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Life in the village

Guiding elements:

(peaceful - cottage - farmers)

Exam (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Once there were two who couldn't live in a pond any longer.
a) cats b) frogs c) dogs d) birds
2. They decided to look for a new
a) school b) home c) car d) tree
3. After a long time, they saw a well.
a) high b) tall c) deep d) small
4. The well looks like a great place for them to !
a) swim b) live c) sleep d) play

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Insects give lizards
a) water b) energy c) food d) home
2. Egypt's land along the Nile is, so we can grow food.
a) fertile b) poor c) dry d) wise
3. At the, you can go on rides.
a) restaurant b) hospital c) theme park d) club

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

follow - stop - healthy - stress

Your heart works all the time. You can keep it strong by eating
1) food, drinking clean water, sleeping well, and exercising daily.
Too much 2) is bad for the heart. If you 3) these tips, your
heart will stay powerful and help you live a long, healthy life.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I live in a small village with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. The people are friendly, and the village is full of life. My family and I live in a cozy cottage near the community center. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields. The air is fresh, and everything feels **calm**. The main square is the busiest place. Farmers keep animals like cows, sheep, and chickens in the barns.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. I live in a small with green fields and tall trees.
a) city b) village c) country d) park
2. Farmers keep animals in the
a) barns b) houses c) shops d) cars

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the busiest place in the village?
4. What animals do farmers keep?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. grow - What - Egypt - in - we - do - ?
.....

2. heart - good - Water - is - for - the - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Amira is (**happiest**) than Ola.
2. She (**see**) a nice animal yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. Ali didn t drink milk
2. what do cows eat

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Sports and health

Guiding elements:

(football - heart - muscles)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Nile River gives for farming.
a) food b) water c) gold d) gas
2. Egypt has minerals like gold and
a) iron b) oil c) fruit d) cotton
3. Farmers grow cotton, wheat, and
a) gas b) fuel c) fruits d) jewelry
4. Oil and natural gas are used to make
a) fuel b) fruits c) water d) jewelry

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Exercising and sleeping enough are good for our
a) snack b) medicine c) mental health d) knowledge
2. Egypt's deserts contain many, such as gold and iron.
a) companies b) crops c) minerals d) secrets
3. I love the smell of fresh bread when I pass by the
a) bakery b) club c) hospital d) restaurant

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

damaged - soil - control - strong

The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich 1) to the land, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the floods were too strong and they 2) farms. To stop this, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins to 3) the water and spread it over their fields.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to share how my habits have changed. In the past, I woke up late on weekends and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning—it makes me feel **strong** and happy. I used to watch TV all day, but now I play football with friends every Saturday. Before, I loved chips, burgers, and sweets. Now, I eat more fruits and vegetables, which give me important vitamins. My favorite snacks are apples, bananas, and carrots.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Adam wakes up now.
a) late b) early c) tired d) sick
2. The underlined word "**strong**" is the opposite of
a) happy b) small c) weak d) big

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are Adam's favorite snacks now?
4. What does exercise do to Adam?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. strong - heart - your - Sports - make - .
.....
2. flood - Did - about - hear - the - you - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We go to the club (**in**) Fridays.
2. She bought (**some**) bottle of water.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. The Nile River flooded every year
2. did he watch the film

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Life in the Nile River

Guiding elements:

(fish - birds - crocodiles)

Exam (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The New Administrative Capital is a city in Egypt.
a) old b) smart c) small d) crowded
2. It is 45 km of Cairo.
a) north b) south c) east d) west
3. The city helps reduce in Cairo.
a) farming b) roads c) crowding d) schools
4. The Iconic Tower is the building in Africa.
a) shortest b) tallest c) oldest d) newest

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. are the parts of your body that help you move.
a) Heart b) Ears c) Skin d) Muscles
2. During, the weather is very hot.
a) heat wave b) flood c) cold d) winter
3. The word " " means goods which are carried by a large ship.
a) digger b) path c) cargo d) road

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

heroes - respect - sports - weak

Healthcare workers also help us live healthier lives as they encourage us to eat healthy meals, stay active, play 1), and stop harmful habits. These 2) work long hours. We should thank them by caring for our health and showing them 3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is rich in natural resources. The Nile River gives us water for drinking and farming. We also have oil and natural gas, which are used to make fuel and electricity. Egypt's fertile land helps farmers grow crops like cotton, wheat, and many kinds of fruits. In the deserts, we can find minerals such as gold and iron. These resources are important because they help us build, make jewelry, and support our economy. We must use these treasures wisely to keep **them** for the future.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The Nile River gives us for drinking.
a) food b) water c) gold d) gas
- Farmers grow crops like cotton, wheat, and many kinds of
a) oil b) fruits c) iron d) gas

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does the underlined word "them" refer to?
- Why is fertile land important for farmers?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- help - do - How - doctors - us - ?
.....

- play - friends - with - I - football - my - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Adam eats bread (in) lunchtime.
- She has more books (that) her friends

7 Punctuate the following.

- birds eat small fish
- it s an amazing film.

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:**The Nile River**

Guiding elements:

(longest - crocodiles - hunt)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (12)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The desert is and dry.
a) hot b) cold c) freezing d) green
2. Snakes eat small animals like
a) birds b) rats c) camels d) owls
3. Camels eat to stay strong.
a) insects b) plants c) lizards d) rats
4. Some animals hide under during the day.
a) water b) sand c) dust d) rocks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A is a route or way for travelling.
a) cargo b) path c) load d) digger
2. We can buy groceries at a
a) bakery b) hospital c) school d) supermarket
3. Omar was so He didn't want to give his toys to anyone.
a) careful b) selfish c) old d) cold

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

irrigation - winds - coal - dry

Droughts happened when there was not enough rain. The Nile's water became low, and the land became 1) Crops could not grow. To solve this, the Ancient Egyptians made 2) systems to bring water to their fields. Sandstorms, called Khamasin, brought strong, hot 3) with sand. It was hard to see and breathe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tamer and Adel are friends. They often talk about places in their neighborhood. Adel likes going to the club to play sports and video games with his friends. Tamer usually goes to the supermarket with his family to buy groceries. They also visit restaurants for dinner every weekend.

Exams

Adel enjoys going to the coffee shop for coffee and cake. Sometimes, they go to the bakery to buy fresh bread. In the afternoon, they plan to visit the bakery together.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Adel likes going to the
a) club b) school c) park d) library
2. Tamer goes to the with his family.
a) supermarket b) hospital c) airport d) cinema

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Adel do at the club?
4. Why do they go to the bakery?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. park - go - theme - Let's - to - the - .
.....

2. finish - the - does - How - story - ?
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The yellow dress is (good) than the blue one.
2. (Are) there sandstorms in the past?

Punctuate the following.

1. which bag is more expensive
2. I don t have any apples

Write a paragraph of **THIRTY (30)** words about:

Mineral resources

Guiding elements:

(gold - diamond - copper)
.....
.....
.....

Exam (13)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adel enjoys going to the to play sports.
a) club b) school c) park d) cinema
2. Tamer goes to the to buy groceries.
a) library b) beach c) hospital d) supermarket
3. Tamer goes to the supermarket with his
a) friends b) animals c) family d) birds
4. When they are, Tamer's family go to the restaurants.
a) angry b) hungry c) thirsty d) bored

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A is a special hat worn by kings or queens.
a) trunk b) crown c) bag d) umbrella
2. This land is It has rich soil to grow food.
a) bad b) terrible c) fertile d) desert
3. Egypt's deserts contain many such as gold and iron,
a) companies b) crops c) minerals d) secrets

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

breathe - bricks - safe - glass

Sandstorms, called Khamasin, brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and 1) People stayed inside to stay 2) They built their homes with thick mud 3) to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Life in the Nile River is full of different animals. Small fish are very colorful and eat plants in the water. Birds eat small fish, insects, and plants near the river. Big fish eat smaller fish and tiny creatures in the water. Crocodiles are the kings of the Nile; they eat fish, birds, and sometimes larger animals. Each animal has an important role in the river. We must protect the Nile River because it helps animals survive and keeps nature in balance.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Small fish in the Nile are very
 a) boring b) colorful c) scary d) large
2. We must the Nile River.
 a) forget b) protect c) close d) leave

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. What do crocodiles eat?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. is - the - river - The - longest - Nile River - .

2. eat - crocodiles - What - do - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My bag is (most) expensive than yours.
2. I want to buy (any) grapes.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. what is your favorite dish
2. they work day and night

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Floods

Guiding elements:

(soil - damaged - canals)

Exam (14)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sandstorms brought strong, hot
a) bricks b) winds c) homes d) mud
2. During sandstorms, it was hard to see and
a) run b) eat c) breathe d) walk
3. They built their homes with thick bricks.
a) mud b) sand c) ice d) gold
4. Homes protected people from wind and
a) rain b) sand c) heat d) bricks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The word "drought" means a long time without
a) food b) home c) rain d) air
2. The word "....." means quiet and calm.
a) peaceful b) noisy c) crowded d) dirty
3. We can go on rides at a
a) bakery b) restaurant c) theme park d) supermarket

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Desert - cheaper - strong - tall

Copper is a strong metal which we use in electrical wires, pipes, and tools. It's 1) than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern 2) Iron is super 3) It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. It's found in many places in Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Lily lived in a cozy house. One morning, she saw big clouds upside down. She worried about her flowers not getting sunshine. Lily remembered her grandma's words: "Gentle whispers can fix things." She whispered to the clouds, "Please turn right side up!" Magically, the clouds flipped and showed their sunny sides. Lily clapped with joy. The sun shone brightly, and her flowers smiled. Lily learned that even big problems can be solved with kindness and a gentle whisper.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Lily lived in a house.
a) cozy b) loud c) empty d) dark
- The clouds were floating down.
a) upside b) straight c) sideways d) right

B) Answer the following questions.

- What did Lily see outside her window?
- What did the flowers do when the sun shone?
- What is the main idea of the text?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- scary - Huge - are - crocodiles - .
.....
- shop - going - I - the coffee - like - to - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Snakes (eat never) plants.
- Ancient Egyptians (don't) have any modern tools.

7 Punctuate the following.

- my uncle lives in alexandria.
- where can you buy cheese

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:**Droughts**

Guiding elements:

(rain - dry - irrigation)

Exam (15)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Small fish eat in the water.
a) plants b) big fish c) birds d) lions
2. eat fish and larger animals.
a) Bats b) Insects c) Crocodiles d) Birds
3. Each animal has an important
a) rule b) snake c) bird d) role
4. We must protect the Nile River to keep it
a) safe b) dangerous c) dirty d) damaged

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We sat under the tree to rest in the on a hot day.
a) crown b) sail c) shade d) branch
2. The word "....." means feeling unhappy or tired.
a) relaxed b) healthy c) comfortable d) stressed
3. To means to stop trying.
a) carry b) give up c) look for d) give out

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

fields - friendly - schools - cottage

I live in a small village with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. The people are 1) and the village is full of life. My family and I live in a cozy 2) near the community center. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the 3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, in a small and quiet village, there were two frogs who were best friends. They lived together in a small pond near the edge of the village. The pond was their home, and they loved it very much. Every day, they had fun catching flies, swimming in the cool water, and resting under the warm sun. One summer, the weather became extremely hot. The sun was strong, and the pond started to dry up. The frogs decided to leave and search for a new safe home.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The story is about two
a) cats b) frogs c) birds d) dogs
- The frogs wanted to find a new
a) toy b) home c) park d) tree

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where did the frogs live?.....
- What did the frogs do every day?
- What is the main idea of the text?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- exercising - important - regularly - Why - is - ?
.....

- a - yesterday - He - watched - film - nice - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- They (often are) late for school.
- Diamond is (most) valuable than gold.

7 Punctuate the following.

- how old is your cousin
- my favorite sport is football

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

Egypt's new cities

Guiding elements:

(Capital - east - smart)

Exam (16)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Playing sports is very for our body and mind.
a) bad b) good c) weak d) hard
2. Sports also reduce
a) stress b) fun c) water d) food
3. Exercising regularly keeps us and happy.
a) sad b) fit c) weak d) tired
4. Sports improve our health.
a) mental b) mineral c) medal d) colorful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. are strong and dangerous animals.
a) Rats b) Cats c) Crocodiles d) Fish
2. The heart blood around your body.
a) plans b) keeps c) pumps d) grows
3. The Iconic is the tallest building in Africa.
a) Tower b) Power c) River d) Sea

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

high - short - peaceful - steel

The Iconic Tower is the tallest building in Africa. It is 385 meters 1) and has 80 floors. It is made of strong glass and 2) From the top, I can see the whole city! People here can find great jobs and have a 3) life. It is my favorite city in Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, a big ship came to the shore to load cargo. It was heavy and got stuck in the thick mud. Many big machines tried to help, but they all failed. Then, a little digger came forward. Everyone laughed and said it was too **small**. The little digger smiled and started digging around the ship. It worked hard without stopping. After some time, the path was clear, and the ship floated free. The captain thanked the digger, who said, " Size doesn't matter. Helping others is true strength."

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The ship came to the shore to cargo.
a) load b) play c) drive d) watch
2. The little digger cleared the around the ship.
a) path b) door c) sky d) wind

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. Why did the ship get stuck near the shore?
5. What is the opposite of the underlined word "small"?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. smart - is - city - The - very - .
.....

2. living - in the - you - like - Do - village - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She bought (an) oranges from the shop.
2. Snakes (usually are) dangerous.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. would you like some tea
2. Ali s birthday is in april.

8 Write a paragraph of THIRTY (30) words about:

The Pyramids

Guiding elements:

(Giza - ancient - Khufu)

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Minerals are natural
 a) animals b) plants c) toys d) resources
2. Gold is perfect for
 a) clothes b) jewelry c) houses d) food
3. Iron is strong and used to make
 a) cars b) flowers c) books d) fruits

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

twice - library - neighborhood - bakery

- Nour : What is your favorite place in your 1)..... ?
- Ali : I like the 2)..... . Their bread is delicious.
- Nour : I love the 3)..... . I read books there.
- Ali : That's cool! Do you go to the library every day?
- Nour : No, I go 4)..... a week.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Extreme weather is different and much stronger than normal weather. It includes strong storms, harsh heat waves, blinding sandstorms, severe floods, long droughts, and much more. These types of weather can cause damage to homes and crops. We should help each other during extreme weather to survive and stay safe.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Extreme weather can homes and crops.
 a) help b) damage c) live d) stay
2. The underlined word "droughts" means a long time without
 a) food b) home c) rain d) air

Exams

3. Extreme weather is than normal weather.
a) weaker b) smaller c) happier d) stronger

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What should we do during extreme weather?
5. List two types of extreme weather mentioned in the text.

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The lungs are the organs that help you
a) think b) move c) breathe d) eat
2. There isn't cheese in the fridge.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
3. You can buy bread and cake at the
a) bakery b) hospital c) supermarket d) club
4. We the pyramids last week.
a) visited b) are visiting c) visit d) visits
5. is a soft, white plant that is used to make fabric.
a) Paper b) Glass c) Cotton d) Iron

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. Tom - place - travelled - another - to - .
.....

2. dry - pond - to - started - The - up - .
.....

3. our - keep - must - We - planet - clean - .
.....

4. about - flood - hear - you - the - Did - ?
.....

5. keep - Where - farmers - do - animals - ?
.....

Exam (18)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in a
a) river b) pond c) forest d) lake
2. They decided to look for a new
a) home b) pond c) friend d) bird
3. After a long time, they saw a deep
a) river b) sea c) well d) lake

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

healthy - energy - heart - sports

- Omar : Dad, why is it important to play 1)..... ?
Dad : Because it helps us stay 2).....
Omar : Does it also help our 3)..... ?
Dad : Yes, it makes your heart stronger and gives you more
4).....
Omar : Great! I will play sports every day.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tom loved a big apple tree in his garden. He played under its shade and ate its sweet apples. But Tom never gave the tree water or care. Years passed, and Tom moved away. When he returned, the tree was weak, its branches bent, and it had few leaves. Tom felt sorry and watered the tree every day. Slowly, it became healthy again. Tom learned that caring for something is important. He promised to always help the tree, and they became best friends forever.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Tom ate sweet from the tree.
a) leaves b) apples c) branches d) flowers

Exams

2. The underlined word "it" refers to the
a) car b) cat c) tree d) house
3. Tom helped the tree by it.
a) cutting b) ignoring c) watering d) climbing

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why was the tree weak when Tom returned?
5. What did Tom learn?

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. A bird built a nest on a high of the tree.
a) crown b) shade c) soil d) branch
2. Do you have water?
a) a b) some c) any d) many
3. are the parts of your body that help you move.
a) Hearts b) Ears c) Skin d) Muscles
4. I some milk yesterday.
a) drink b) drank c) is drinking d) drinks
5. Children like to play sports at the
a) bakery b) club c) restaurant d) supermarket

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. apple - eats - Adel - every day - an -
.....
2. good - health - is - for - Milk -
.....
3. visit - When - the - you - did - zoo - ?
.....
4. The - house - flooded - water - the -
.....
5. want - grapes - some - I - to - buy -
.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- In a village, people live in cozy
a) castles b) hotels c) cottages d) caves
- There is a in the main square.
a) market b) hospital c) school d) library
- Farmers keep their in barns.
a) cars b) animals c) motorbikes d) bikes

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

soil - Nile - canals - flooded

- Ali : What happened to the 1)..... River every year?
- Sara : It 2)..... every year.
- Ali : What did the water bring to the land?
- Sara : Rich 3)..... to help crops grow.
- Ali : How did the Egyptians stop the strong floods?
- Sara : They built 4)..... and basins to control the water.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Healthcare workers – like doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics are real-life heroes who spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat illnesses. Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients, diagnose diseases, and provide treatments. Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care for patients.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Healthcare workers like doctors, nurses, and pharmacists are real-life
a) heroes b) patients c) teachers d) drivers
- Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients and diseases.
a) diagnose b) paint c) cook d) play

3. Doctors help to keep people healthy and treat
 a) illnesses b) stories c) clothes d) sports

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do nurses work around the clock?
 5. What does the underlined pronoun "their" refer to?

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Omar was so He didn't want to give his toys to anyone.
 a) careful b) selfish c) cool d) old
2. There is milk in the fridge.
 a) a b) an c) some d) any
3. Lungs are the organs in your chest that help you
 a) think b) move c) breathe d) eat
4. She a nice animal yesterday.
 a) see b) saw c) is seeing d) sees
5. I saw a deep that was full of water last week.
 a) tool b) well c) frog d) sun

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. sailed - lake - The - across - boat - the - .

2. She - school - to - yesterday - go - didn't - .

3. every year - flooded - River - Nile - The - .

4. makes - strong - heart - your - Sport - .

5. minerals - wisely - use - We - must - .

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom apples and Tom played on it. Tom traveled away for many years and when he came back, the tree was weak. Tom knew that he was selfish. So he decided to take care of the tree. The tree grew strong again.

Unit (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

I am Adam. I want to tell you about my habits. I used to watch TV all day, but now I play football with friends every Saturday. Before, I loved chips, burgers, and sweets. Now, I eat more fruits and vegetables, which give me important vitamins.

Unit (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

There was a flood in our city. It was terrible. The water covered the streets and many cars got stuck. My uncle's house was damaged. The water flooded his living room and he had to stay with us for a few days.

Unit (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Tamer and Adel talk about places in their neighborhood. Adel likes going to the club to play sports, video games, and hang out with friends. Tamer goes to the supermarket with his family. They eat at restaurants. Adel enjoys coffee shops for coffee and cake. They plan to visit the bakery.

Unit (5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

I sleep deep under the earth, hidden and quiet. People search for me, dream about me, and admire me. I sit in the crowns of kings and the rings of queens. I am soft and beautiful. I am treasured because I am valuable. I am gold.

Exams

Exam (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. Crocodiles are strong and dangerous. They hunt large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat water weeds.

Exam (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple ingredients in one bowl. First, you need to cook rice in a pot with water. In another pot, prepare small pasta. Then, boil lentils in water. For the red sauce, fry some chopped garlic in oil, add tomato sauce, vinegar, and some spices.

Exam (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The heart is a very strong muscle. It pumps blood all around the body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell and removes waste. To keep our heart healthy, you should eat good food, drink water, sleep well, and avoid stress. Exercise also makes it stronger.

Listening Texts

Exam (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ancient Egypt had weather that helped farming. The Nile River gave water and rich soil. Floods happened every year. Sometimes, floods were strong and damaged farms. Egyptians built canals to control water. They worked hard to survive and used simple tools.

Exam (5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy cottages surrounded by green fields and fresh air. There is a market in the main square. Farmers keep their animals in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

Exam (6)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Healthcare workers are real-life heroes. They include doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics. Doctors use their knowledge to treat illnesses. Nurses work day and night to care for patients. Pharmacists give medicine and advice. Paramedics help in emergencies and take patients safely to hospitals.

Exam (7)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. Gold is soft, shiny and easy to shape. People use it for coins and jewelry. Diamond is a rare mineral-even more valuable than gold.

Exam (8)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom apples and Tom played on it. Tom traveled away and when he came back, the tree was weak. Tom knew that he was selfish. So he decided to take care of the tree. The tree grew strong again.

Exam (9)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in a pond any longer. So, they decided to look for a new home. After a long time, they saw a deep well. One of the frogs said, "This well." looks like a great place for us to live! But the other frog thought it wasn't safe. So, they searched for a better home.

Exam (10)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Egypt has many natural resources. The Nile River gives water for farming and drinking. Oil and natural gas are used to make fuel and electricity. Farmers grow crops like wheat, cotton and fruits. Minerals such as gold and iron are found in Egypt's deserts.

Exam (11)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The New Administrative Capital is a smart city in Egypt. It is 45 km east of Cairo. It helps reduce crowding and has modern technology to manage roads and energy. The city has green areas, government offices, and the Iconic Tower, which is the tallest building in Africa.

Exam (12)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day.

Exam (13)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Tamer and Adel talked about places they like to visit. Adel enjoys going to the club to play sports, video games, and hang out with his friends. Tamer usually goes to the supermarket with his family to buy groceries. When they are hungry, Tamer's family goes to restaurants to try different meals.

Exam (14)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Sandstorms, called Khamsin, brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and breathe. People stayed inside to stay safe. They built their homes with thick mud bricks to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

Exam (15)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The Nile River is full of life. Small fish eat plants in the water. Birds eat fish, insects and plants. Big fish eat smaller fish and insects. Crocodiles eat fish and larger animals. Each animal has an important role. We must protect the Nile River to keep it safe.

Exam (16)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Playing sports is very good for our body and mind. It makes our bones stronger and helps us sleep better. Sports also reduce stress and improve our mental health. Exercising regularly keeps us fit and happy. Walking or running every day is an easy way to be healthy.

Al-Azhar Exam (17)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Minerals are natural resources that we find underground. Gold, diamond, copper, and iron are all minerals. Gold is soft and shiny, perfect for jewelry. Iron is strong and used to make cars and ships.

Al-Azhar Exam (18)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in a pond any longer. So, they decided to look for a new home. After a long time, they saw a deep well. One of the frogs said, "This well looks like a great place for us to live! But the other frog thought it wasn't safe. So, they searched for a better home.

Al-Azhar Exam (19)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy cottages surrounded by green fields and fresh air. There is a market in the main square where people buy and sell fresh fruit and vegetables. Farmers keep their animals in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

Answers of paragraphs

Unit (1)

Animals in the desert

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes eat rats or lizard. Camels eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects to get energy from them.

Your favorite Egyptian dish

Hawawshi is a tasty Egyptian meal with simple ingredients. We make it with meat, spices and bread. We mix meat with spices and put them inside the bread. Then we put the bread in the oven. People like eating it hot.

Unit (2)

Sport

Playing sports is very important. Sports help us stay healthy and make our bodies stronger. Playing football makes your heart strong and helps your muscles grow. Sports and exercise make us stay strong.

Healthcare workers

Healthcare workers are doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics. Doctors diagnose diseases and provide treatments. Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies.

Unit (3)

Weather wonders

The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich soil to the land, which helped crops to grow. Droughts happened when there wasn't enough rain. Sandstorms brought strong, hot winds with sand.

The weather in Alexandria

Alexandria is a very beautiful city. Many people go there in summer. The weather there is so beautiful. People go there to enjoy swimming and going out. It's colder there in summer.

Unit (4)

Life in my village

I live in a small village with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. We live in cozy cottages. Farmers are friendly. They keep their animals in barns. They keep cows, goats and sheep.

Places in your community

There are many places in my community. We have a theme park, we go there to go on rides. There is a supermarket, we buy groceries there. There is a club where we go to play sports.

Unit (5)

Natural resources

Natural resources are things we find in nature, like water and trees. They help us in our daily lives. Water is used for drinking and farming. We use oil and natural gas for making fuel and electricity.

Minerals

We find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper and iron under the earth. Gold is used for making coins and jewelry. Diamond is rare and more valuable than gold. Copper is used for making electrical wires.

Exam (1)

Healthcare heroes

Healthcare workers are real-life heroes. They work day and night to keep people healthy. Doctors use their knowledge to check patients. Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies. They give help on the spot and take patients safely to hospital.

Exam (2)

The weather in Ancient Egypt

The weather in Ancient Egypt had some problems. The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich soil to the land. Sometimes water damaged farms. Droughts happened when there was not enough rain.

Exam (3)

Floods

The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich soil to the land, which helped crops grow. Sometimes the floods damaged farms. The Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins to control the water.

Exam (4)

Your favorite Egyptian food

My favorite Egyptian food is Koshari. It is made with rice, pasta, and lentils. Spices are added to make it tasty. Crispy onions and tomato sauce are put on top. Koshari is delicious, cheap, and easy to make.

Exam (5)

Places in your neighborhood

There are a lot of places in my neighborhood. There is a club, a supermarket and a restaurant. We go to the club to play sports. We go shopping at the supermarket. We eat tasty meals at the restaurant.

Exam (6)

Your favorite Egyptian dish

My favourite Egyptian dish is Koshari. It is made of rice, pasta and lentils. It has tomato sauce and fried onions. Garlic gives it a strong taste. I love eating it with my family.

Exam (7)

The heart

The heart is one of the most important organs of our body. The heart's job is to pump blood to all parts of the body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell.

Exam (8)

Life in the village

Life in the village is peaceful. People live in small cottages. Farmers work in the fields every day. They grow crops and take care of animals. The air is fresh and clean.

Exam (9)

Sports and health

Sport is very important. It makes the heart strong and build muscles. Sport gives us energy. It is fun and help us stay healthy and happy.

Exam (10)

Life in the Nile River

Life in the Nile River is amazing. Many fish swim in it. Birds fly over the water. Crocodiles live near the river. The Nile is full of life and beauty.

Exam (11)

The Nile River

The Nile River is the longest river in the world. It flows through many countries. People use it for water and farming. Crocodiles live in the Nile. Some people hunt fish there.

Exam (12)

Minerals resources

Mineral resources are very important. Gold is used to make jewelry and coins. Diamond is shiny and used in rings. Copper is used in wires and pipes.

Exam (13)

Floods

The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich soil. But sometimes, the floods were too strong and damaged farms. To stop this, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins to control the water and spread it over their fields.

Exam (14)

Droughts

Droughts happened when there was not enough rain. The Nile's water became low, and the land became dry. Crops could not grow. To solve this, the Ancient Egyptians made irrigation systems to bring water to their fields.

Exam (15)

Egypt's new cities

Egypt builds new cities everywhere. The New Administrative Capital is east of Cairo. The city is designed to be very smart. Modern technology is used to manage roads, water and energy.

Exam (16)

The Pyramids

The Pyramids are in Giza. They are very big and ancient. They were built a long time ago. King Khufu built the Great Pyramid. The Pyramids are very famous.